



Daniel

translationNotes

v6

Copyrights & Licensing

License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to help@door43.org

Version: 6

Published: 2017-02-22

Table of Contents

| | |
|---|-----------|
| Copyrights & Licensing | 1 |
| translationNotes | 14 |
| Introduction to Daniel | 14 |
| Daniel 1 General Notes | 27 |
| Daniel 1:1-2 | 28 |
| Daniel 1:3-5 | 30 |
| Daniel 1:6-7 | 32 |
| Daniel 1:8-10 | 33 |
| Daniel 1:11-13 | 35 |
| Daniel 1:14-16 | 36 |
| Daniel 1:17-18 | 37 |
| Daniel 1:19-21 | 38 |
| Daniel 2 General Notes | 40 |
| Daniel 2:1-2 | 41 |
| Daniel 2:3-4 | 43 |
| Daniel 2:5-6 | 45 |
| Daniel 2:7-9 | 46 |
| Daniel 2:10-11 | 48 |
| Daniel 2:12-13 | 49 |
| Daniel 2:14-16 | 50 |
| Daniel 2:17-18 | 52 |
| Daniel 2:19-20 | 54 |
| Daniel 2:21-22 | 56 |
| Daniel 2:23 | 58 |
| Daniel 2:24 | 60 |
| Daniel 2:25-26 | 61 |
| Daniel 2:27-28 | 62 |
| Daniel 2:29-30 | 64 |
| Daniel 2:31-33 | 65 |
| Daniel 2:34-35 | 66 |
| Daniel 2:36-38 | 68 |
| Daniel 2:39 | 70 |
| Daniel 2:40 | 71 |
| Daniel 2:41-43 | 72 |
| Daniel 2:44-45 | 73 |
| Daniel 2:46-47 | 75 |
| Daniel 2:48-49 | 77 |
| Daniel 3 General Notes | 78 |
| Daniel 3:1-2 | 79 |
| Daniel 3:3-5 | 81 |
| Daniel 3:6-7 | 83 |

Table of Contents

| | |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Daniel 3:8-10 | 85 |
| Daniel 3:11-12 | 87 |
| Daniel 3:13-14 | 89 |
| Daniel 3:15 | 91 |
| Daniel 3:16-18 | 93 |
| Daniel 3:19-20 | 95 |
| Daniel 3:21-23 | 96 |
| Daniel 3:24-25 | 97 |
| Daniel 3:26-27 | 98 |
| Daniel 3:28 | 100 |
| Daniel 3:29-30 | 102 |
| Daniel 4 General Notes | 104 |
| Daniel 4:1-3 | 105 |
| Daniel 4:4-6 | 107 |
| Daniel 4:7-9 | 109 |
| Daniel 4:10-12 | 111 |
| Daniel 4:13-14 | 113 |
| Daniel 4:15-16 | 114 |
| Daniel 4:17-18 | 116 |
| Daniel 4:19 | 118 |
| Daniel 4:20-22 | 120 |
| Daniel 4:23 | 122 |
| Daniel 4:24-25 | 123 |
| Daniel 4:26-27 | 125 |
| Daniel 4:28-30 | 127 |
| Daniel 4:31-32 | 129 |
| Daniel 4:33 | 131 |
| Daniel 4:34 | 133 |
| Daniel 4:35 | 135 |
| Daniel 4:36-37 | 137 |
| Daniel 5 General Notes | 139 |
| Daniel 5:1-2 | 140 |
| Daniel 5:3-4 | 142 |
| Daniel 5:5-6 | 144 |
| Daniel 5:7 | 145 |
| Daniel 5:8-9 | 147 |
| Daniel 5:10 | 148 |
| Daniel 5:11-12 | 149 |
| Daniel 5:13-14 | 151 |
| Daniel 5:15-16 | 153 |
| Daniel 5:17-19 | 155 |
| Daniel 5:20-21 | 157 |
| Daniel 5:22-24 | 159 |

| | |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Daniel 5:25-28 | 161 |
| Daniel 5:29-31 | 163 |
| Daniel 6 General Notes | 165 |
| Daniel 6:1-3 | 166 |
| Daniel 6:4-5 | 168 |
| Daniel 6:6-7 | 170 |
| Daniel 6:8-9 | 172 |
| Daniel 6:10-11 | 173 |
| Daniel 6:12 | 174 |
| Daniel 6:13-14 | 175 |
| Daniel 6:15 | 176 |
| Daniel 6:16 | 177 |
| Daniel 6:17-18 | 178 |
| Daniel 6:19-20 | 180 |
| Daniel 6:21-22 | 181 |
| Daniel 6:23 | 182 |
| Daniel 6:24-25 | 183 |
| Daniel 6:26-27 | 185 |
| Daniel 6:28 | 187 |
| Daniel 7 General Notes | 188 |
| Daniel 7:1-3 | 189 |
| Daniel 7:4-5 | 191 |
| Daniel 7:6-7 | 193 |
| Daniel 7:8 | 194 |
| Daniel 7:9 | 195 |
| Daniel 7:10 | 197 |
| Daniel 7:11-12 | 199 |
| Daniel 7:13-14 | 201 |
| Daniel 7:15-16 | 203 |
| Daniel 7:17-18 | 204 |
| Daniel 7:19-20 | 205 |
| Daniel 7:21-22 | 207 |
| Daniel 7:23-24 | 208 |
| Daniel 7:25-26 | 210 |
| Daniel 7:27-28 | 212 |
| Daniel 8 General Notes | 214 |
| Daniel 8:1-2 | 215 |
| Daniel 8:3-4 | 217 |
| Daniel 8:5-6 | 218 |
| Daniel 8:7-8 | 219 |
| Daniel 8:9-10 | 220 |
| Daniel 8:11-12 | 221 |
| Daniel 8:13-14 | 223 |

Table of Contents

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| Daniel 8:15-17 | 225 |
| Daniel 8:18-19 | 227 |
| Daniel 8:20-21 | 228 |
| Daniel 8:22-23 | 229 |
| Daniel 8:24-25 | 231 |
| Daniel 8:26 | 233 |
| Daniel 8:27 | 234 |
| Daniel 9 General Notes | 235 |
| Daniel 9:1-2 | 236 |
| Daniel 9:3-4 | 238 |
| Daniel 9:5-6 | 240 |
| Daniel 9:7-8 | 242 |
| Daniel 9:9-11 | 244 |
| Daniel 9:12-14 | 246 |
| Daniel 9:15-16 | 248 |
| Daniel 9:17-19 | 250 |
| Daniel 9:20-21 | 252 |
| Daniel 9:22-23 | 254 |
| Daniel 9:24-25 | 255 |
| Daniel 9:26 | 257 |
| Daniel 9:27 | 259 |
| Daniel 10 General Notes | 261 |
| Daniel 10:1 | 262 |
| Daniel 10:2-3 | 263 |
| Daniel 10:4-6 | 264 |
| Daniel 10:7-9 | 266 |
| Daniel 10:10-11 | 268 |
| Daniel 10:12-13 | 269 |
| Daniel 10:14-15 | 271 |
| Daniel 10:16-17 | 272 |
| Daniel 10:18-19 | 274 |
| Daniel 10:20-21 | 275 |
| Daniel 11 General Notes | 277 |
| Daniel 11:1-2 | 278 |
| Daniel 11:3-4 | 280 |
| Daniel 11:5-6 | 282 |
| Daniel 11:7-9 | 284 |
| Daniel 11:10 | 286 |
| Daniel 11:11-12 | 287 |
| Daniel 11:13 | 289 |
| Daniel 11:14 | 290 |
| Daniel 11:15-16 | 291 |
| Daniel 11:17-19 | 293 |

| | |
|--|------------|
| Daniel 11:20-22 | 295 |
| Daniel 11:23-24 | 297 |
| Daniel 11:25-27 | 298 |
| Daniel 11:28 | 300 |
| Daniel 11:29-30 | 301 |
| Daniel 11:31-32 | 302 |
| Daniel 11:33-35 | 304 |
| Daniel 11:36-37 | 306 |
| Daniel 11:38-39 | 308 |
| Daniel 11:40-41 | 310 |
| Daniel 11:42-43 | 312 |
| Daniel 11:44-45 | 313 |
| Daniel 12 General Notes | 315 |
| Daniel 12:1-2 | 316 |
| Daniel 12:3-4 | 318 |
| Daniel 12:5-6 | 320 |
| Daniel 12:7 | 321 |
| Daniel 12:8-9 | 323 |
| Daniel 12:10-11 | 324 |
| Daniel 12:12-13 | 326 |
| translationQuestions | 327 |
| Daniel 1 | 327 |
| Daniel 2 | 330 |
| Daniel 3 | 334 |
| Daniel 4 | 337 |
| Daniel 5 | 341 |
| Daniel 6 | 344 |
| Daniel 7 | 347 |
| Daniel 8 | 350 |
| Daniel 9 | 353 |
| Daniel 10 | 356 |
| Daniel 11 | 358 |
| Daniel 12 | 363 |
| translationWords | 365 |
| abomination, abominable | 365 |
| accuse, accusation, accuser | 366 |
| acknowledge | 367 |
| administration, administrator | 368 |
| adversary, enemy | 369 |
| Ahasuerus | 370 |
| alarm, alarmed | 371 |
| marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished | 372 |
| Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess | 373 |

Table of Contents

| | |
|---|-----|
| angel, archangel | 374 |
| angry, anger | 376 |
| anoint, anointed | 377 |
| appoint, appointed | 378 |
| assign, assigned | 379 |
| atonement, atone | 380 |
| authority | 381 |
| awe, awesome | 382 |
| Azariah | 383 |
| Babylon, Babylonian | 384 |
| banquet | 385 |
| beg, beggar | 386 |
| biblical time: day | 387 |
| biblical time: month | 388 |
| biblical time: year | 389 |
| blameless | 390 |
| bles, blessed, blessing | 391 |
| boast, boastful | 393 |
| breathe, breath | 394 |
| bronze | 396 |
| burnt offering, offering by fire | 397 |
| cast out, drive out, throw out | 398 |
| chaff | 399 |
| Chaldea, Chaldean | 400 |
| chariot | 401 |
| chief | 402 |
| clean, cleanse | 403 |
| command, to command, commandment | 404 |
| commander, command | 405 |
| companion | 406 |
| compassion, compassionate | 407 |
| concubine | 408 |
| confess, confession | 409 |
| confirm, confirmation | 410 |
| consecrate | 411 |
| contempt, contemptible | 412 |
| corrupt, corruption | 413 |
| counsel, counselor, advice, advisor | 414 |
| covenant | 415 |
| creature | 417 |
| Translation Suggestions | 418 |
| curse, cursed | 419 |
| cut off | 420 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Cyrus | 421 |
| Daniel | 422 |
| Darius | 423 |
| darkness | 424 |
| death, die, dead | 425 |
| deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive | 427 |
| decree | 428 |
| dedicate, dedication | 429 |
| descendant, descended from | 430 |
| desolate, desolation | 431 |
| devastate, devastation | 432 |
| devour | 433 |
| divine | 434 |
| dominion | 435 |
| donkey, mule | 436 |
| dream | 437 |
| eagle | 438 |
| earth, earthly | 439 |
| Edom, Edomite, Idumea | 440 |
| Egypt, Egyptian | 441 |
| Elam | 442 |
| everlasting, eternal, eternity | 443 |
| Ethiopia, Ethiopian | 444 |
| evil, wicked, wickedness | 445 |
| exile, the Exile | 447 |
| face | 448 |
| faithful, faithfulness | 450 |
| false god, foreign god, god, goddess | 451 |
| fast | 452 |
| favor, favorable, favoritism | 453 |
| fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh | 454 |
| feast | 455 |
| festival | 456 |
| fire | 457 |
| flood | 458 |
| flute, pipe | 459 |
| forever | 460 |
| forgive, forgiveness | 461 |
| forsake, forsaken, forsook | 462 |
| fulfill | 463 |
| Gabriel | 464 |
| generation | 465 |
| glorify | 466 |

Table of Contents

| | |
|---|-----|
| glory, glorious | 467 |
| goat, kid | 468 |
| God | 469 |
| gold | 471 |
| governor, govern, proconsul, government | 472 |
| Greece | 473 |
| Hananiah | 474 |
| hand, right hand, to hand over | 475 |
| harp | 477 |
| head | 478 |
| heart | 480 |
| heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly | 481 |
| holy, holiness | 482 |
| holy place, most holy place | 483 |
| honor, to honor | 484 |
| horsemen | 485 |
| house of God, Yahweh's house | 486 |
| humble, humility | 487 |
| idol, idolatrous | 488 |
| image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure | 489 |
| incense | 490 |
| iniquity | 491 |
| interpret, interpretation | 492 |
| Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel | 493 |
| Jehoiakim | 494 |
| Jeremiah | 495 |
| Jerusalem | 496 |
| Jew, Jewish, Jews | 498 |
| Judah | 499 |
| judge, judgment | 500 |
| judge | 502 |
| judgment day | 503 |
| just, justice, justly | 504 |
| kingdom | 505 |
| king | 507 |
| know, knowledge, make known | 508 |
| lampstand | 509 |
| last day, last days, latter days | 510 |
| law, principle | 511 |
| law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh | 512 |
| learned men, astrologers | 514 |
| leopard | 515 |
| life, live, living, alive | 516 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| light | 518 |
| like, likeness | 519 |
| lion | 520 |
| lord, master, sir | 521 |
| Lord | 522 |
| love | 523 |
| lute, lyre | 525 |
| magic, magician | 526 |
| magistrate, magistrates | 527 |
| majesty | 528 |
| manager, steward | 529 |
| Medes, Media | 530 |
| mercy, merciful | 531 |
| messenger | 533 |
| Michael | 534 |
| mighty, might | 535 |
| mind | 536 |
| minister, ministry | 537 |
| miracle, wonder, sign | 538 |
| Misrael | 540 |
| Moab, Moabite, Moabites | 541 |
| Most High | 542 |
| mourn, mourning | 543 |
| mystery, hidden truth | 544 |
| name | 545 |
| nation | 546 |
| Nebuchadnezzar | 547 |
| noble, nobleman | 548 |
| oath, swear, swear by | 549 |
| obey, obedient, obedience | 550 |
| oil | 551 |
| oppress, oppression, oppressor | 552 |
| ox, oxen | 553 |
| palace | 554 |
| peace, peaceful | 555 |
| people group, peoples, the people, a people | 556 |
| people of God, my people | 558 |
| Persia, Persians | 559 |
| plead, pleading, plea | 560 |
| possess, possession | 561 |
| power, powers | 562 |
| praise | 563 |
| pray, prayer | 564 |

Table of Contents

| | |
|---|-----|
| precious | 565 |
| prince, princess | 566 |
| proclaim, proclamation | 567 |
| profane | 568 |
| prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess | 569 |
| prosper, prosperity, prosperous | 571 |
| proud, pride, prideful | 572 |
| province, provincial | 573 |
| pure, purify, purification | 574 |
| purple | 575 |
| qualify, qualified | 576 |
| queen | 577 |
| rage | 578 |
| raise, rise, risen, arise, arose | 579 |
| rebel, rebellious, rebellion | 581 |
| reign | 582 |
| report | 583 |
| rest | 584 |
| restore, restoration | 585 |
| resurrection | 586 |
| reveal, revelation | 587 |
| reward | 588 |
| righteous, righteousness | 589 |
| robe | 590 |
| royal | 591 |
| ruler, rulers, rule | 592 |
| run, running | 593 |
| sackcloth | 594 |
| sacred | 595 |
| sacrifice, offering | 596 |
| saints | 598 |
| sanctuary | 599 |
| save, safe | 600 |
| seal, to seal | 602 |
| servant, slave, slavery | 603 |
| serve, service | 605 |
| shame, shameful, ashamed | 606 |
| sheep, ram, ewe | 607 |
| sign, proof, reminder | 608 |
| silver | 610 |
| sin, sinful, sinner, sinning | 611 |
| sleep, asleep, fall asleep | 613 |
| snow | 614 |

| | |
|--|------------|
| Son of Man, son of man | 615 |
| sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft | 616 |
| spirit, spiritual | 617 |
| splendor | 619 |
| statute, statutes | 620 |
| stone, stoning | 621 |
| stronghold, fortress, fortified | 622 |
| stumble | 623 |
| sweep, swept | 624 |
| sword | 625 |
| tax, taxes | 626 |
| temple | 627 |
| tent | 629 |
| terror, terrify | 630 |
| test | 631 |
| thresh, threshing | 632 |
| throne | 633 |
| time | 634 |
| transgress, transgression | 635 |
| trouble, troubles, troubled | 636 |
| true, truth, come true | 637 |
| trumpet | 639 |
| trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness | 640 |
| tunic | 641 |
| turn, turn away, turn back | 642 |
| vision | 643 |
| voice | 644 |
| walk | 645 |
| wine, wineskin, new wine | 646 |
| wise, wisdom | 647 |
| wise men | 648 |
| word | 649 |
| word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture | 650 |
| works, deeds, work, acts | 652 |
| worship | 653 |
| wrath, fury | 654 |
| written | 655 |
| Yahweh | 656 |
| translationAcademy | 658 |
| First, Second or Third Person | 658 |
| Abstract Nouns | 660 |
| Active or Passive | 663 |
| Doublet | 666 |

Table of Contents

| | |
|--|-----|
| Ellipsis | 668 |
| Euphemism | 670 |
| Exclusive “We” | 672 |
| Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information | 674 |
| Hyperbole | 676 |
| Idiom | 679 |
| Litotes | 681 |
| Merism | 683 |
| Metaphor | 685 |
| Metonymy | 690 |
| Nominal Adjectives | 692 |
| Parallelism | 694 |
| Personification | 696 |
| Pronouns | 698 |
| Direct and Indirect Quotations | 700 |
| Rhetorical Question | 702 |
| Simile | 705 |
| Synecdoche | 708 |
| Forms of You | 710 |
| Biblical Distance | 711 |
| Biblical Money | 714 |
| Hebrew Months | 716 |
| How to Translate Names | 719 |
| Numbers | 723 |
| Ordinal Numbers | 726 |
| Symbolic Action | 729 |
| Copy or Borrow Words | 732 |
| Translate Unknowns | 734 |
| Verse Bridges | 737 |
| Symbolic Prophecy | 739 |
| Background Information | 741 |
| Symbolic Language | 744 |

translationNotes

Introduction to Daniel

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of Daniel

1. The time and place of the book of Daniel; the first trials and tests of the exiles (1:1–21)
2. The dream of Nebuchadnezzar and its interpretation (2:1–49)
3. The Golden Image, the fiery furnace and deliverance (3:1–30)
4. Deciphering Nebuchadnezzar's dream and his fall from power (4:1–37)
5. Belshazzar's Feast and the writing on the wall and Daniel in the lion's den (5:1–6:28)
6. The vision of the four beasts (7:1–28)
7. The vision of the ram and the goat (8:1–27)
8. Daniel's prayer and Gabriel answers (9:1–23)
9. The vision of the seventy weeks (9:24–27)
10. Daniel's vision of a man (10:1–11:1)
11. The King of the South and the North (11:2–20)
12. A contemptible person rises up, until the desolation is completed (11:21–12:3)
13. The time of the end (12:3–13)

What is the Book of Daniel about?

The Book of Daniel is about several Jewish young men, Daniel and his friends, who were taken to Babylon as prisoners from Jerusalem. The first section of the book of Daniel (Chapters 1–6) is a narrative about Daniel and his friends, and about how they were faithful to Yahweh even though they were living in a pagan land and serving a pagan king. It praises their faithfulness to Yahweh as they were faced with difficulties, and it tells how he rewarded them.

Following this is a section of prophetic visions (Chapters 7–12). Chapters 7 and 8 deal with images representing the kingdoms and kings of the major nations. Chapters 9–12 are prophecies and visions leading up to the destruction of Jerusalem and the appearance of a type of the great enemy of God, and ending with a final vision in Chapter 12 that leads up to time of the Messiah.

How should the title of this book be translated?

“The Book of Daniel” may also be called the “The book about Daniel” or “The Book about the deeds and visions of Daniel.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Who wrote The Book of Daniel?

Daniel was a Jewish governmental official in Babylon during the exile. He may have written the book himself or at least the original parts of the book, which were perhaps later put together in the way we have now.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

Why is there a missing week in Daniel's prophecy?

There is much speculation regarding Daniel's "missing week." It is best for translators to allow this mystery to remain in the text. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

When do the seventy weeks begin?

An exact date for the beginning of the prophecy of the seventy weeks is unknown. The timeline begins when a decree is issued to rebuild the city of Jerusalem, but there were several decrees that allowed this to happen.

Who was Darius the Mede?

Darius the Mede was a king of Babylon who sent Daniel into the lion's den. Unfortunately, his name is not known in history outside of the Book of Daniel. Many explanations about who Darius was have been suggested, but they are not certain.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

How does Daniel use the word "king"?

There are many kings in Daniel, but not all of the kings were rulers of all of Babylon or Persia. Some of the kings may have been kings of regions or cities.

How many chapters does Daniel have?

Daniel has twelve chapters. Some Bible versions include the stories called "Bel and the Dragon" and "The prayer of Azariah," but few people believe that these stories are equal in authority with the rest of scripture. Therefore, there is no need to translate them.

List of translationAcademy Topics in Daniel

* [First, Second or Third Person](#) is found in: 02:07, 02:23, 04:01, 04:04, 04:07, 04:10, 04:13, 04:15, 04:17, 04:19, 04:20, 04:23, 04:24, 04:26, 04:28, 04:31, 04:33, 04:34, 04:35, 04:36

* [Abstract Nouns](#) is found in: 01:17, 07:27, 09:07, 11:33, 11:44

* [Active or Passive](#) is found in: 01:03, 02:05, 02:12, 02:17, 02:19, 02:27, 02:29, 02:34, 02:41, 02:44, 02:46, 03:03, 03:06, 03:15, 03:21, 03:26, 03:29, 04:07, 04:17, 04:19, 04:24, 04:26, 04:31, 04:33, 04:34, 04:35, 05:01, 05:03, 05:07, 05:11, 05:13, 05:15, 05:20, 05:22, 05:25, 05:29, 06:04, 06:06, 06:17, 06:21, 06:23, 06:26, 07:04, 07:06, 07:08, 07:09, 07:11, 07:13, 07:21, 07:25, 07:27, 08:07, 08:09, 08:11, 08:13, 09:01, 09:09, 09:12, 09:22, 09:24, 09:26, 09:27, 10:01, 10:07, 10:10, 10:12, 10:18, 10:20, 11:03, 11:05, 11:11, 11:13, 11:20, 11:23, 11:25, 11:28, 11:33, 11:42, 12:01, 12:07, 12:10

- * **Doublet** is found in: 02:07, 02:10, 02:12, 02:14, 02:36, 04:01, 04:04, 04:36, 05:17, 06:26, 07:01, 07:17, 07:27, 09:05, 09:15, 09:22, 09:24, 09:27, 11:36
- * **Ellipsis** is found in: 11:03
- * **Euphemism** is found in: 07:19, 12:12
- * **Exclusive “We”** is found in: 02:03, 09:07, 09:15
- * **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information** is found in: 01:08, 02:14, 02:39, 03:16, 04:13, 04:17, 04:19, 04:35, 05:07, 05:15, 05:22, 06:04, 06:15, 06:17, 07:11, 07:23, 08:05, 08:18, 08:22, 09:20, 10:07, 10:20, 11:01, 11:20, 11:28, 11:40, 11:42, 12:03, 12:10
- * **Hyperbole** is found in: 01:17, 01:19, 03:06, 04:01, 04:20, 05:17, 06:24, 09:12
- * **Idiom** is found in: 01:03, 01:08, 03:28, 04:31, 04:36, 06:13, 07:09, 07:17, 07:25, 07:27, 08:05, 08:07, 08:09, 09:07, 09:09, 09:12, 09:17, 09:24, 10:07, 10:16, 11:17, 11:25, 11:31, 11:36, 11:42
- * **Litotes** is found in: 01:03, 01:19, 02:10, 02:34
- * **Metaphor** is found in: 02:07, 03:13, 03:19, 03:28, 04:26, 05:22, 05:25, 07:10, 07:23, 08:11, 08:26, 09:03, 09:07, 09:09, 09:17, 09:26, 10:07, 11:03, 11:05, 11:07, 11:11, 11:14, 11:15, 11:20, 11:25, 11:28, 11:31, 11:33, 11:36, 11:40, 11:42, 12:03, 12:08
- * **Metonymy** is found in: 02:01, 02:19, 02:21, 02:36, 03:01, 03:03, 03:06, 03:11, 03:13, 03:15, 04:01, 04:26, 04:36, 05:01, 05:13, 05:17, 05:20, 05:22, 06:13, 07:04, 07:08, 07:25, 08:03, 08:20, 08:24, 09:03, 09:05, 09:09, 09:12, 09:15, 09:17, 09:20, 09:27, 10:10, 10:16, 11:11, 11:15, 11:17, 11:20, 11:25, 11:28, 11:29, 11:31, 11:33, 11:40, 11:44
- * **Nominal Adjectives** is found in: 04:26
- * **Parallelism** is found in: 04:01, 04:04, 04:20, 04:34, 06:26, 07:13, 07:15, 09:05, 09:15, 09:24
- * **Personification** is found in: 02:12, 04:20, 04:36, 06:17, 08:09, 08:11, 08:24, 11:25
- * **Pronouns** is found in: 02:36, 04:15
- * **Direct and Indirect Quotations** is found in: 04:35
- * **Rhetorical Question** is found in: 01:08, 03:15, 04:28, 10:16
- * **Simile** is found in: 02:34, 02:40, 03:24, 07:09, 07:13, 10:04, 11:10, 12:03
- * **Synecdoche** is found in: 01:01, 01:03, 01:08, 02:03, 02:29, 05:20, 05:22, 06:01, 07:08, 07:15, 09:22
- * **Synecdoche]]** is found in: 08:15
- * **Forms of You** is found in: 09:24, 10:20
- * **Biblical Distance** is found in: 03:01
- * **Hebrew Months** is found in: 10:04
- * **How to Translate Names** is found in: 01:03, 01:06, 02:03, 02:14, 02:24, 02:25, 03:01, 05:01, 08:01, 10:04, 11:29, 11:42
- * **Numbers** is found in: 04:28, 05:01, 05:29, 06:01, 06:06, 08:13, 09:01, 11:11, 12:10, 12:12

- * **Ordinal Numbers** is found in: 02:01, 02:39, 02:40, 03:24, 05:07, 05:15, 05:29, 08:01, 10:01, 11:01
- * **Symbolic Action** is found in: 02:46, 03:03, 03:06, 03:08, 03:11, 03:13, 03:15, 06:17, 08:15, 09:03, 09:24
- * **Verse Bridges** is found in: 04:28
- * **Background Information** is found in: 06:10, 08:01, 08:05, 09:01
- * **Symbolic Language** is found in: 02:36, 02:40, 04:10, 07:01, 07:04, 07:06, 07:09, 07:10, 07:13, 07:23, 07:25, 07:27, 08:01, 08:03, 08:20, 08:22, 08:24

List of translationWords in Daniel

- * **abomination, abominable** is found in: 09:27, 11:31, 12:10
- * **accuse, accusation, accuser** is found in: 03:08
- * **acknowledge** is found in: 04:24, 04:31, 11:38
- * **administration, administrator** is found in: 02:48, 06:01, 06:04
- * **adversary, enemy** is found in: 04:19, 11:11
- * **Ahasuerus** is found in: 09:01
- * **alarm, alarmed** is found in: 11:44
- * **marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished** is found in: 02:48, 03:24, 11:36, 12:05
- * **Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess** is found in: 11:40
- * **angel, archangel** is found in: 10:10, 11:01
- * **angry, anger** is found in: 02:12, 03:13, 09:15
- * **anoint, anointed** is found in: 09:24, 09:26, 10:02
- * **assign, assigned** is found in: 12:12
- * **atonement, atone** is found in: 09:24
- * **authority** is found in: 04:20, 05:07, 05:15, 05:29, 07:06, 07:11, 07:13
- * **awe, awesome** is found in: 09:03
- * **Azariah** is found in: 01:06, 01:19, 02:17
- * **Babylon, Babylonian** is found in: 01:01, 01:03, 02:12, 02:14, 02:17, 02:24, 02:48, 03:01, 03:11, 03:29, 04:04, 04:28, 05:07, 05:29, 07:01, 09:01
- * **banquet** is found in: 05:10
- * **beg, beggar** is found in: 09:12, 09:17
- * **biblical time: day** is found in: 10:04
- * **biblical time: month** is found in: 04:28
- * **biblical time: year** is found in: 08:01

- * blameless is found in: 06:21
- * bless, blessed, blessing is found in: 12:12
- * boast, boastful is found in: 07:08, 07:11, 07:19
- * breathe, breath is found in: 05:22, 10:16
- * bronze is found in: 02:31, 02:34, 02:39, 02:44, 04:15, 05:03, 07:19, 10:04
- * burnt offering, offering by fire is found in: 08:11, 08:13, 11:31, 12:10
- * cast out, drive out, throw out is found in: 04:24
- * chaff is found in: 02:34
- * Chaldea, Chaldean is found in: 03:08
- * chariot is found in: 11:40
- * chief is found in: 01:11, 02:48, 04:07, 05:11, 06:04, 10:12
- * clean, cleanse is found in: 11:33
- * command, to command, commandment is found in: 03:03, 03:13, 03:19, 03:21, 03:28, 04:26, 05:29, 09:03, 09:05
- * commander, command is found in: 02:14, 08:11, 11:05, 11:17
- * companion is found in: 07:19
- * compassion, compassionate is found in: 01:08, 09:09
- * concubine is found in: 05:01, 05:03, 05:22
- * confess, confession is found in: 09:03, 09:20
- * confirm, confirmation is found in: 09:12, 09:27
- * consecrate is found in: 09:24
- * contempt, contemptible is found in: 12:01
- * corrupt, corruption is found in: 06:04
- * counsel, counselor, advice, advisor is found in: 03:01, 03:03, 03:26, 04:36
- * covenant is found in: 09:03, 09:27, 11:20, 11:28, 11:29, 11:31
- * creature is found in: 04:10
- * curse, cursed is found in: 09:09
- * cut off is found in: 01:01
- * Cyrus is found in: 01:19, 06:28, 10:01
- * Daniel is found in: 01:06, 01:17, 01:19, 02:12, 02:14, 02:17, 02:19, 02:24, 02:25, 02:27, 02:46, 02:48, 04:07, 04:19, 05:13, 05:17, 05:29, 06:01, 06:04, 06:13, 06:17, 06:28, 07:01, 07:15, 07:27, 08:01, 08:15, 08:27, 09:01, 09:22, 10:01, 10:10, 10:12, 12:03, 12:05, 12:08

- * Darius is found in: 05:29, 06:01, 06:06, 06:08, 06:24, 06:28, 09:01, 11:01
- * darkness is found in: 02:21
- * death, die, dead is found in: 02:27, 04:07, 05:07, 05:11, 05:15
- * deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive is found in: 02:07, 08:24, 11:23
- * decree is found in: 02:12, 02:14, 03:29, 04:01, 04:04, 04:17, 04:24, 04:31, 04:33, 06:06, 06:08, 06:12, 06:13, 06:26, 09:05, 09:24, 09:26, 09:27, 11:36
- * dedicate, dedication is found in: 03:01, 03:03
- * descendant, descended from is found in: 09:01, 11:03
- * desolate, desolation is found in: 09:17, 09:26, 09:27
- * devastate, devastation is found in: 08:24, 09:17, 12:10
- * devour is found in: 07:04, 07:19, 07:23
- * divine is found in: 08:11
- * dominion is found in: 04:01, 06:26, 07:27
- * donkey, mule is found in: 05:20
- * dream is found in: 01:17, 02:01, 02:03, 02:05, 02:07, 02:24, 02:25, 02:27, 02:36, 02:44, 04:04, 04:07, 04:17, 04:19, 05:11, 07:01
- * eagle is found in: 04:33, 07:04
- * earth, earthly is found in: 02:10, 02:34, 02:39, 04:10, 04:15, 04:20, 04:35, 06:24, 06:26, 07:23, 12:01
- * Edom, Edomite, Idumea is found in: 11:40
- * Egypt, Egyptian is found in: 09:15, 11:07, 11:42
- * Elam is found in: 08:01
- * everlasting, eternal, eternity is found in: 04:01, 04:34, 07:13, 07:27, 09:24, 12:01
- * Ethiopia, Ethiopian is found in: 11:42
- * evil, wicked, wickedness is found in: 09:05, 09:15, 09:24, 11:25, 12:10
- * exile, the Exile is found in: 02:25, 05:13, 06:13
- * face is found in: 08:05, 09:03, 09:17
- * faithful, faithfulness is found in: 06:04, 09:03
- * false god, foreign god, god, goddess is found in: 01:01, 02:10, 03:11, 03:13, 03:15, 03:16, 03:24, 03:28, 03:29, 04:07, 04:17, 05:11, 05:13, 11:07, 11:36, 11:38
- * fast is found in: 06:17, 09:03
- * favor, favorable, favoritism is found in: 01:08, 04:36, 11:29
- * fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh is found in: 04:04, 05:17, 06:26, 10:12, 10:18

- * feast is found in: 05:01
- * festival is found in: 07:25
- * fire is found in: 07:09, 07:10
- * flood is found in: 09:26, 11:10, 11:20, 11:25, 11:40
- * flute, pipe is found in: 03:03, 03:06, 03:08, 03:15
- * forever is found in: 02:03, 02:19, 02:44, 03:08, 04:34, 05:10, 06:06, 06:21, 06:26, 07:17, 12:03, 12:07
- * forgive, forgiveness is found in: 09:09, 09:17
- * forsake, forsaken, forsook is found in: 09:20, 11:29
- * fulfill is found in: 11:14
- * Gabriel is found in: 08:15, 09:20
- * generation is found in: 04:01, 04:34
- * glorify is found in: 04:34
- * glory, glorious is found in: 04:28, 04:36, 07:13, 08:09, 11:40
- * goat, kid is found in: 08:05, 08:07, 08:20
- * God is found in: 01:17, 02:17, 02:19, 02:23, 02:27, 02:36, 02:44, 02:46, 03:16, 03:28, 03:29, 05:25, 06:04, 06:10, 06:19, 09:03, 09:09, 09:12, 09:15, 09:17, 09:20, 10:12, 11:31, 11:36
- * gold is found in: 02:31, 02:34, 02:36, 02:44, 03:01, 03:03, 03:06, 03:08, 03:13, 05:01, 05:03, 05:07, 05:15, 05:22, 05:29, 10:04, 11:07, 11:38, 11:42
- * governor, govern, proconsul, government is found in: 02:48, 03:01, 03:03, 03:26, 06:01, 06:04
- * Greece is found in: 08:20, 10:20, 11:01
- * Hananiah is found in: 01:06, 02:17
- * hand, right hand, to hand over is found in: 02:36, 02:44, 03:15, 03:16, 05:22, 08:03, 08:24, 09:15, 11:15, 11:40
- * harp is found in: 03:03, 03:06, 03:08, 03:15
- * head is found in: 02:36
- * heart is found in: 05:20, 05:22, 11:25, 11:28
- * heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly is found in: 02:17, 02:19, 02:27, 02:36, 02:44, 04:10, 04:13, 04:15, 04:20, 04:23, 04:24, 04:26, 04:31, 04:33, 04:34, 04:35, 04:36, 05:20, 05:22, 06:26, 07:13, 08:07, 08:09, 08:13, 09:12, 11:03, 12:03, 12:07
- * holy, holiness is found in: 04:07, 04:13, 04:17, 04:23, 05:11, 07:21, 07:25, 07:27, 08:13, 08:24, 09:15, 09:24, 11:28, 11:29, 11:44, 12:07
- * holy place, most holy place is found in: 09:24, 09:26
- * honor, to honor is found in: 02:05, 02:36, 02:46, 02:48, 04:34, 04:36, 05:17, 05:22, 11:20, 11:38

- * horsemen is found in: 11:40
- * house of God, Yahweh's house is found in: 01:01, 05:03
- * humble, humility is found in: 04:17, 04:36, 05:17, 10:12
- * idol, idolatrous is found in: 05:03, 05:22
- * image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure is found in: 11:07
- * incense is found in: 02:46
- * iniquity is found in: 04:26, 09:12, 09:15
- * interpret, interpretation is found in: 02:05, 02:14, 02:44, 04:04, 04:07, 04:17, 04:19, 04:24, 05:11, 05:15
- * Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel is found in: 01:03, 08:09, 09:07, 09:09, 09:20
- * Jehoiakim is found in: 01:01
- * Jeremiah is found in: 09:01
- * Jerusalem is found in: 01:01, 05:01, 05:03, 06:10, 09:01, 09:07, 09:12, 09:15, 09:24
- * Jew, Jewish, Jews is found in: 03:08, 03:11
- * Judah is found in: 01:01, 01:06, 02:25, 05:13, 06:13, 09:07
- * judge is found in: 03:01, 03:03
- * just, justice, justly is found in: 04:36, 07:21, 11:17
- * king is found in: 01:01, 01:03, 01:08, 01:14, 01:17, 01:19, 02:01, 02:03, 02:05, 02:07, 02:10, 02:12, 02:14, 02:21, 02:23, 02:24, 02:25, 02:27, 02:29, 02:31, 02:36, 02:44, 02:46, 02:48, 03:01, 03:03, 03:06, 03:08, 03:11, 03:16, 03:21, 03:24, 03:29, 04:01, 04:17, 04:19, 04:20, 04:23, 04:24, 04:28, 04:31, 04:36, 05:01, 05:03, 05:05, 05:07, 05:08, 05:10, 05:11, 05:13, 05:17, 05:20, 05:29, 06:01, 06:08, 06:12, 06:13, 06:15, 06:16, 06:17, 07:01, 07:17, 07:23, 08:01, 08:20, 08:22, 08:24, 08:27, 09:01, 09:05, 09:07, 10:01, 10:12, 11:01, 11:03, 11:05, 11:07, 11:11, 11:13, 11:14, 11:15, 11:17, 11:25, 11:36, 11:40
- * kingdom is found in: 01:19, 02:36, 02:39, 02:40, 02:41, 02:44, 04:01, 04:17, 04:24, 04:26, 04:31, 04:34, 04:36, 05:07, 05:11, 05:15, 05:17, 05:20, 05:25, 05:29, 06:01, 06:04, 06:26, 07:13, 07:17, 07:21, 07:23, 07:27, 08:22, 10:12, 11:01, 11:03, 11:05, 11:17, 11:20
- * know, knowledge, make known is found in: 01:03, 02:03, 02:29, 05:11, 11:31, 12:03
- * lampstand is found in: 05:05
- * last day, last days, latter days is found in: 10:14
- * law, principle is found in: 06:08, 06:10, 06:15, 09:09
- * law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh is found in: 07:25, 09:09, 09:12
- * learned men, astrologers is found in: 02:27, 04:07, 05:07, 05:11
- * leopard is found in: 07:06
- * life, live, living, alive is found in: 02:29, 02:36, 03:08, 05:10, 06:06, 06:19, 06:26, 12:01, 12:07

- * **light** is found in: 02:21, 05:11, 05:13
- * **like, likeness** is found in: 02:34
- * **lion** is found in: 06:06, 06:12, 06:24, 07:04
- * **lord, master, sir** is found in: 01:08, 04:19, 04:24, 10:16, 10:18, 12:08
- * **Lord** is found in: 01:01, 02:46, 05:22, 09:03, 09:07, 09:09, 09:15, 09:17
- * **love** is found in: 09:03, 09:22, 10:10, 10:18
- * **lute, lyre** is found in: 03:03, 03:06, 03:08, 03:15
- * **magic, magician** is found in: 01:19, 02:01, 02:10, 02:27, 04:07, 05:11
- * **magistrate, magistrates** is found in: 03:01, 03:03
- * **majesty** is found in: 04:28, 04:36, 05:17, 05:20
- * **manager, steward** is found in: 01:11, 01:14
- * **Medes, Media** is found in: 05:25, 05:29, 06:08, 06:12, 06:15, 08:20, 09:01, 11:01
- * **mercy, merciful** is found in: 02:17, 04:26, 09:12, 09:17, 09:22
- * **messenger** is found in: 03:28, 04:13, 04:17, 04:23, 06:21
- * **Michael** is found in: 10:12, 10:20, 12:01
- * **mighty, might** is found in: 04:01
- * **mind** is found in: 01:08, 02:01, 02:03, 02:07, 02:27, 04:04, 04:10, 04:13, 04:15, 07:04, 07:15, 10:12
- * **minister, ministry** is found in: 07:10
- * **miracle, wonder, sign** is found in: 04:01, 06:26
- * **Mishael** is found in: 01:06, 02:17
- * **Moab, Moabite, Moabites** is found in: 11:40
- * **Most High** is found in: 03:26, 04:01, 04:17, 04:24, 04:31, 04:34, 05:17, 05:20, 07:17, 07:25, 07:27
- * **mourn, mourning** is found in: 10:02
- * **mystery, hidden truth** is found in: 02:17, 02:27, 02:46, 04:07
- * **name** is found in: 02:19, 09:05, 09:15, 09:17
- * **nation** is found in: 03:03, 03:06, 03:29, 04:01, 05:17, 06:24, 07:13, 08:22, 12:01
- * **Nebuchadnezzar** is found in: 01:01, 01:17, 02:01, 02:27, 02:46, 03:01, 03:03, 03:06, 03:08, 03:13, 03:16, 03:19, 03:24, 03:26, 03:28, 04:01, 04:04, 04:17, 04:28, 04:31, 04:33, 04:34, 04:36, 05:01, 05:11, 05:17
- * **noble, nobleman** is found in: 04:36, 05:01, 05:03, 05:08, 05:10, 05:22
- * **oath, swear, swear by** is found in: 09:09, 12:07
- * **obey, obedient, obedience** is found in: 07:27, 09:09, 09:12

- * oil is found in: 10:02
- * oppress, oppression, oppressor is found in: 04:26, 07:25
- * ox, oxen is found in: 04:24, 04:31, 04:33, 05:20
- * palace is found in: 04:04, 04:28, 05:05, 06:17
- * peace, peaceful is found in: 04:01, 06:24, 10:18
- * people group, peoples, the people, a people is found in: 02:41, 02:44, 03:03, 03:06, 03:29, 04:01, 04:31, 04:33, 05:17, 06:24, 07:13
- * people of God, my people is found in: 07:21, 07:27, 09:15, 09:17, 09:24
- * Persia, Persians is found in: 05:25, 06:08, 06:12, 06:15, 06:28, 08:20, 10:01, 10:12, 10:20, 11:01
- * plead, pleading, plea is found in: 09:22
- * possess, possession is found in: 07:17, 11:33
- * power, powers is found in: 02:19, 02:23, 02:31, 02:36, 06:26, 08:07, 08:22, 08:24, 11:01, 11:03, 11:25, 11:42, 12:07
- * praise is found in: 02:19, 02:23, 03:28, 04:34, 04:36, 05:03
- * pray, prayer is found in: 02:23, 06:10, 06:13, 09:03, 09:17, 09:20
- * precious is found in: 11:38
- * prince, princess is found in: 10:12, 10:20, 12:01
- * proclaim, proclamation is found in: 05:29
- * profane is found in: 11:31
- * prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess is found in: 09:01, 09:05, 09:09, 09:24
- * prosper, prosperity, prosperous is found in: 04:04
- * proud, pride, prideful is found in: 04:36, 11:11, 11:36
- * province, provincial is found in: 03:01, 03:03, 03:11, 03:26, 03:29, 06:01, 06:04, 11:23
- * pure, purify, purification is found in: 11:33, 12:10
- * purple is found in: 05:07, 05:15, 05:29
- * qualify, qualified is found in: 01:03
- * queen is found in: 05:10
- * rage is found in: 03:13, 08:05
- * raise, rise, risen, arise, arose is found in: 07:17, 11:03, 11:07, 11:13, 11:14, 12:01, 12:12
- * rebel, rebellious, rebellion is found in: 08:11, 09:05, 09:09
- * reign is found in: 01:01, 02:01, 04:34, 06:28, 08:01, 09:01
- * report is found in: 11:44

- * rest is found in: 12:12
- * reveal, revelation is found in: 02:03, 02:05, 02:19, 02:21, 02:25, 02:27, 02:29, 02:46, 09:22, 10:01, 11:01
- * reward is found in: 02:05
- * righteous, righteousness is found in: 09:07, 09:12, 09:17, 09:24, 12:03
- * robe is found in: 03:21, 03:26
- * royal is found in: 01:03, 04:28, 07:13, 07:25
- * ruler, rulers, rule is found in: 02:36, 02:39, 02:48, 04:17, 04:24, 05:15, 05:20, 05:29, 06:01, 09:12, 09:26, 11:38
- * run, running is found in: 12:03
- * sackcloth is found in: 09:03
- * sacred is found in: 01:01
- * sacrifice, offering is found in: 02:46, 09:20, 09:27
- * saints is found in: 07:17
- * sanctuary is found in: 08:11, 08:13, 09:17, 11:31
- * save, safe is found in: 03:29, 06:19, 12:01
- * seal, to seal is found in: 08:26, 12:03, 12:08
- * servant, slave, slavery is found in: 01:11, 02:03, 02:07, 03:26, 03:28, 05:03, 06:19, 09:05, 09:09, 09:17, 10:16
- * serve, service is found in: 01:03, 01:19, 03:11, 03:16, 06:16, 07:10, 07:13, 07:27
- * shame, shameful, ashamed is found in: 09:07, 12:01
- * sheep, ram, ewe is found in: 08:03, 08:20
- * silver is found in: 02:31, 02:34, 02:44, 05:01, 05:03, 05:22, 11:07, 11:38, 11:42
- * sin, sinful, sinner, sinning is found in: 04:26, 08:13, 09:03, 09:05, 09:07, 09:09, 09:15, 09:20, 09:24
- * sleep, asleep, fall asleep is found in: 12:01
- * snow is found in: 07:09
- * Son of Man, son of man is found in: 07:13, 08:15, 10:16
- * sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft is found in: 02:01
- * spirit, spiritual is found in: 04:07, 04:17, 05:11, 05:13, 05:20, 06:01, 07:15
- * splendor is found in: 04:36, 11:20
- * statute, statutes is found in: 06:15
- * stone, stoning is found in: 02:44

- * **stronghold, fortress, fortified** is found in: 11:07, 11:10, 11:17, 11:23, 11:38
- * **stumble** is found in: 11:14, 11:17, 11:33
- * **sweep, swept** is found in: 11:40
- * **sword** is found in: 11:33
- * **tax, taxes** is found in: 11:20
- * **temple** is found in: 05:01, 05:03
- * **tent** is found in: 11:44
- * **terror, terrify** is found in: 02:31, 10:07
- * **test** is found in: 01:11, 01:14
- * **thresh, threshing** is found in: 02:34
- * **throne** is found in: 02:21, 04:36, 05:20, 07:09
- * **time** is found in: 08:15, 08:18, 12:01
- * **transgress, transgression** is found in: 08:22, 09:09
- * **trouble, troubles, troubled** is found in: 02:01, 04:04, 05:10, 07:15, 12:01
- * **true, truth, come true** is found in: 02:44, 08:11, 08:26, 09:12, 10:01, 11:01
- * **trumpet** is found in: 03:03, 03:08
- * **trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness** is found in: 03:28, 06:23
- * **tunic** is found in: 03:21
- * **turn, turn away, turn back** is found in: 09:05, 09:09, 09:12, 09:15, 11:17, 11:29, 12:03
- * **vision** is found in: 01:17, 02:19, 02:27, 04:04, 07:01, 07:13, 07:15, 08:01, 08:13, 08:15, 08:18, 08:26, 09:20, 09:24, 10:01, 10:07, 10:14, 10:16, 11:14
- * **voice** is found in: 09:09, 09:12
- * **walk** is found in: 09:09
- * **wine, wineskin, new wine** is found in: 01:03, 01:08, 01:14, 05:01, 05:03, 05:22, 10:02
- * **wise, wisdom** is found in: 01:03, 01:17, 01:19, 02:12, 02:14, 02:17, 02:19, 02:21, 02:23, 02:24, 02:27, 02:29, 04:04, 04:07, 04:17, 05:07, 05:08, 05:11, 05:13, 05:15, 11:33, 12:03, 12:10
- * **wise men** is found in: 02:01, 02:03, 02:10
- * **word** is found in: 09:12, 09:22, 10:01, 10:04, 10:10, 10:12, 12:03, 12:08
- * **word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture** is found in: 09:01
- * **works, deeds, work, acts** is found in: 04:36, 09:12
- * **worship** is found in: 03:06, 03:11, 03:13, 03:15, 03:16, 03:28
- * **wrath, fury** is found in: 08:18, 09:15, 11:36

* **written** is found in: 09:12

* **Yahweh** is found in: 09:03, 09:07, 09:09, 09:12, 09:20

Daniel 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Training for government jobs

Daniel, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego were chosen to be trained for service in the Babylonian Kingdom. It was not unusual for foreigners to be given positions in the Babylonian government as advisors or cultural ambassadors.

Special concepts in this chapter

Food laws

The food from the king included things the Jews were not allowed to eat according to the law of Moses. Daniel requested permission not to eat the king's food. He proved to the king that this food was not necessary for good health. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Links:

- [Daniel 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Introduction to Daniel](#)

Daniel 1:1-2**UDB:**

¹ After King Jehoiakim had been ruling in Judah for almost three years, King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon came to Jerusalem with his army and surrounded the city so that the city would be weakened before the army attacked. ² After two years, the Lord gave Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers victory over Jehoiakim, who was the king of Judah. They also took some of the sacred objects that were in the temple of God, and took them to Babylonia in the land of Shinar. There Nebuchadnezzar put them in the treasure house of his god.

ULB:

1 ¹ In the third year of the reign of Jehoiakim king of Judah, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylonia came to Jerusalem and surrounded the city to cut off all supplies to it. ² The Lord gave Nebuchadnezzar victory over Jehoiakim king of Judah, and he gave him some of the sacred objects from the house of God. He brought them into the land of Babylonia, to the house of his god, and he placed the sacred objects in his god's treasury.

translationWords:

- reign
- Jehoiakim
- king
- Judah
- Nebuchadnezzar
- Babylon, Babylonian
- Jerusalem
- cut off
- Lord
- sacred
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess

translationNotes:

- **Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylonia** - This refers to Nebuchadnezzar and his soldiers, not only to Nebuchadnezzar. AT: "Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers" or "Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylonia and his soldiers" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **to cut off all supplies to it** - "to stop the people from receiving any supplies"
- **Jehoiakim king of Judah** - This refers to Jehoiakim and his soldiers, not only to Jehoiakim. AT: "the army of Jehoiakim king of Judah" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

- **he gave him** - Jehoiakim gave Nebuchadnezzar
- **He brought ... he placed** - Although Nebuchadnezzar did not do these things alone, it may be easier for the reader to retain the singular pronouns. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **He brought them** - Here “them” probably refers to Jehoiakim and other prisoners, as well as the sacred objects.
- **in his god’s treasury** - This was an act of devotion to his god.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 01 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 1:3-5

UDB:

³ Then Nebuchadnezzar commanded Ashpenaz, the chief official in his palace, to bring to him some of the Israelite men whom they had brought to Babylon. These were men who belonged to important families, including the family of the king of Judah. ⁴ King Nebuchadnezzar wanted only men who were very healthy, handsome, wise, well educated, capable of learning many things, and suitable for working in the palace. He wanted to teach them the Babylonian language so that they could understand the writings of the Babylonians. ⁵ The king commanded his servants, “Give them the fine, rich foods and wine served to me. Train them for three years and then they will become my servants.”

ULB:

³ The king spoke to Ashpenaz, his chief official, to bring in some of the people of Israel, both of the royal family and of the nobility— ⁴ young men without blemish, attractive in appearance, skillful in all wisdom, filled with knowledge and understanding, and qualified to serve in the king’s palace. He was to teach them the Babylonians’ literature and language. ⁵ The king counted out for them a daily portion of his delicacies and some of the wine that he drank. These young men were to be trained for three years, and after that, they would serve the king.

translationWords:

- king
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- royal
- wise, wisdom
- know, knowledge, make known
- qualify, qualified
- serve, service
- Babylon, Babylonian
- wine, wineskin, new wine

translationNotes:

- **The king spoke** - This refers to Nebuchadnezzar.
- **Ashpenaz** - This is the chief official. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **nobility** - This is the highest social class.
- **without blemish** - These two negative words together emphasize a positive idea. AT: “with perfect appearance” (See: [Litotes](#))

- **filled with knowledge and understanding** - This is an idiom. This means they knew much and could organize and use that information. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **king's palace** - This is the large house or building where the king lives.
- **He was to teach them** - "Ashpenaz was to teach them"
- **The king counted out for them** - The king's officials did this task for him. AT: "The king's officials counted out for them" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **his delicacies** - the special, rare, good foods that the king ate
- **These young men were to be trained** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "Ashpenaz was to train these young men" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **trained** - "taught skills"

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 01 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 1:6-7

UDB:

⁶ Among the young Israelite men who were chosen were Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, who all came from Judah. ⁷ Ashpenaz gave them Babylonian names. He gave to Daniel the name Belteshazzar, he gave to Hananiah the name Shadrach, he gave to Mishael the name Meshach, and he gave Azariah the name Abednego.

ULB:

⁶ Among these were Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, some of the people of Judah. ⁷ The chief official gave them names: Daniel he called Belteshazzar, Hananiah he called Shadrach, Mishael he called Meshach, and Azariah he called Abednego.

translationWords:

- [Daniel](#)
- [Hananiah](#)
- [Mishael](#)
- [Azariah](#)
- [Judah](#)

translationNotes:

- **Among these** - "Among the young men from Israel"
- **The chief official** - This refers to Ashpenaz who was King Nebuchadnezzar's highest official.
- **Belteshazzar ... Shadrach ... Meshach ... Abednego** - These are all men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 01 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 1:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ But Daniel decided that he would not eat the kind of food that the king ate, or drink the wine that the king drank because that would make him ritually defiled. So he asked Ashpenaz, the chief of the king's officials for permission to eat and drink other food so that he might not defile himself. ⁹ God gave Daniel kindness and compassion in the relationship he had with Ashpenaz. The chief official had great respect for Daniel. ¹⁰ He said to Daniel, "My master the king, has chosen what food and drink you should have. If you eat other things and you become thinner and paler than the other young men who are your age, he could order his soldiers to cut off my head because you did not follow his directions."

ULB:

⁸ But Daniel intended in his mind that he would not pollute himself with the king's delicacies or with the wine that he drank. So he asked permission from the chief official that he might not pollute himself. ⁹ Now God gave Daniel favor and compassion through the respect that the chief official had for him. ¹⁰ The chief official said to Daniel, "I am afraid of my master the king. He has commanded what food and drink you should have. Why should he see you looking worse than the other young men of your own age? The king might have my head because of you."

translationWords:

- mind
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- compassion, compassionate
- lord, master, sir
- king

translationNotes:

- **Daniel intended in his mind** - Here "mind" refers to Daniel himself. AT: "Daniel decided to himself" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **pollute himself** - To "pollute" something is to make it unclean. Some of the food and drink of the Babylonians would make Daniel ceremonially unclean according to God's law. This can be made explicit. AT: "make himself unclean according to God's law" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **delicacies** - This refers to the special, rare, good foods that the king ate. See how you translated this in [1:3](#).

- **Why should he see you looking worse than the other young men of your own age?** - The official uses this question to explain what he thought would happen. It can be a statement. AT: “He does not want to see you looking worse than the other young men of your own age.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **The king might have my head** - This is an idiom. AT: “The king might cut off my head” or “The king might kill me” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 01 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 1:11-13**UDB:**

¹¹ The chief official assigned a servant to give Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah their food and drink. Daniel spoke to him. ¹² He said, "Please test your servants! For ten days give us only vegetables to eat and water to drink. ¹³ After ten days, see whether we look healthy or not. Also see how those who eat the king's food look. Then you do to us whatever you think is best."

ULB:

¹¹ Then Daniel spoke to the steward whom the chief official had assigned over Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah. ¹² He said, "Please test us, your servants, for ten days. Give us only some vegetables to eat and water to drink. ¹³ Then compare our appearance with the appearance of the young men who eat the king's delicacies, and treat us, your servants, based on what you see."

translationWords:

- [manager, steward](#)
- [chief](#)
- [test](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

translationNotes:

- **compare our appearance with the appearance** - Daniel asked the steward to see if he and his friends looked worse than the other young men. AT: "compare our appearance to see if it is worse than the appearance"

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 01 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 1:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ The servant agreed to this test. He gave them the food Daniel requested for ten days.

¹⁵ After ten days, he saw that they looked healthier and better nourished than all the young men who had been eating the food the king chose for them. ¹⁶ So after that he took away the king's special food and wine, and he only gave them vegetables to eat.

ULB:

¹⁴ So the steward agreed with him to do this, and he tested them for ten days. ¹⁵ At the end of ten days their appearance was more healthy, and they were better nourished, than all the young men who ate the king's delicacies. ¹⁶ So the steward took away their delicacies and their wine and gave them only vegetables.

translationWords:

- [manager, steward](#)
- [test](#)
- [king](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)

translationNotes:

- **tested them ... their appearance ... they were ... their delicacies ... their wine** - All of these pronouns refer to Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah.
- **nourished** - This means to have been made healthy from what you have eaten.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 01 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 1:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ God gave to these four young men wisdom and the ability to study many things that the Babylonians had written and studied. He also gave to Daniel the ability to understand the meaning of visions and dreams.

¹⁸ After three years, the king chose a day when those who were in training would come before him. Ashpenaz, the chief of the king's officials, presented them all to Nebuchadnezzar.

ULB:

¹⁷ As for these four young men, God gave them knowledge and insight in all literature and wisdom, and Daniel could understand all kinds of visions and dreams. ¹⁸ At the end of the time set by the king to bring them in, the chief official brought them in before Nebuchadnezzar.

translationWords:

- [God](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [Daniel](#)
- [vision](#)
- [dream](#)
- [king](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)

translationNotes:

- **God gave them knowledge and insight** - This can be reworded so that the abstract nouns "knowledge" and "insight" can be expressed as the verbs "learn" and "understand." AT: "God gave them the ability to learn and understand clearly in" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **all literature and wisdom** - This is an exaggeration to show that they had a very good education and understanding. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 01 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 1:19-21**UDB:**

¹⁹ The king talked with them and realized that none of the other young men were as capable as Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah. So they stood together, ready to begin their service to the king. ²⁰ In every question requiring wisdom and understanding, the king found these men advised him ten times more effectively than his magicians and those who claimed to speak with the dead. There were none better than these four in his entire kingdom.

²¹ Daniel remained there serving the king more than sixty years until the first year that Cyrus became king.

ULB:

¹⁹ The king spoke with them, and among the whole group there were none to compare with Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah. They stood before the king, ready to serve him. ²⁰ In every question of wisdom and understanding that the king asked them, he found them ten times better than all the magicians and those who claimed to speak with the dead, who were in his entire kingdom.

²¹ Daniel was there until the first year of King Cyrus.

translationWords:

- king
- Daniel
- Azariah
- serve, service
- wise, wisdom
- magic, magician
- kingdom
- Cyrus

translationNotes:

- **The king spoke with them** - The king spoke with the “four young men” (1:17).
- **among the whole group there were none to compare with Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah** - This can be stated in positive form. AT: “Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah pleased him much more than anyone else in the whole group” (See: **Litotes**)
- **Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah** - These are the names of men. See how you translated these names in 1:6-7.
- **ten times better** - Here “ten times” is an exaggeration representing great quality. AT: “much better” (See: **Hyperbole**)
- **the first year of King Cyrus** - “the first year that King Cyrus ruled Babylon”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 01 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 01 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart extended quotations, prayers or songs. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 2:20-23, which is special prayer.

Special concepts in this chapter

The king's dream

Daniel told the king's dream and what the dream meant. In the ancient Near East, it was believed that only people in touch with the gods could interpret dreams. (See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#))

How Daniel knew the dream

Daniel gave Yahweh the honor of having told him the dream and its meaning in answer to the prayers of the four men.

Links:

- [Daniel 02:01 Notes](#)

Daniel 2:1-2**UDB:**

¹ One night during the second year that Nebuchadnezzar ruled, he had a dream. The dream worried him so much that he could not sleep. ² The next morning he summoned his men who worked magic, those who claimed to speak with the dead, those who gave advice from watching the stars, and the wise men. To test their skill, he demanded that they tell him what he had dreamed. They came and stood before the king.

ULB:

² ¹ In the second year of the reign of Nebuchadnezzar, he had dreams. His mind was troubled, and he could not sleep. ² Then the king summoned the magicians and those who claimed to speak with the dead. He also called the sorcerers and wise men. He wanted them to tell him about his dreams. So they came in and stood before the king.

translationWords:

- reign
- Nebuchadnezzar
- dream
- mind
- trouble, troubles, troubled
- king
- magic, magician
- sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft
- wise men

translationNotes:

- **In the second year** - “In year two” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **he had dreams** - “Nebuchadnezzar had dreams”
- **His mind was troubled** - Here “mind” refers to his thoughts. AT: “His thoughts disturbed him” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **and he could not sleep** - His troubled thoughts prevented him from sleeping. AT: “so that he could not sleep”
- **Then the king summoned the magicians** - “Then the king called the magicians”
- **the dead** - “people who had died”
- **they came in** - “they came into the palace”
- **stood before** - “stood in front of”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 2:3-4**UDB:**

³ The king said, “I had a dream last night that worries me and I want to know what the dream means.”

⁴ The men who studied the stars replied to the king, (what follows is written in the Aramaic language). They said, “King Nebuchadnezzar, may you live forever! Tell us your dream and we will tell you what it means!”

ULB:

³ The king said to them, “I have had a dream, and my mind is anxious to know what the dream means.” ⁴ Then the wise men spoke to the king in Aramaic, “King, live forever! Tell the dream to us, your servants, and we will reveal the meaning.”

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [dream](#)
- [mind](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [wise men](#)
- [forever](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [reveal, revelation](#)

translationNotes:

- **my mind is anxious** - Here “mind” refers to the king himself. AT: “I am anxious” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **anxious** - “troubled”
- **Aramaic** - This is the language that people in Babylon spoke. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **King, live forever!** - The men probably said this to show the king that they were loyal to him. AT: “King, we hope you will live forever!”
- **us, your servants** - The men called themselves the king’s servants to show him respect.
- **we will reveal** - Here the word “we” refers to the men that the king is speaking to and does not include the king. (See: [Exclusive “We”](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)

- Daniel 02 General Notes
- Daniel 02 Translation Questions

Daniel 2:5-6

UDB:

⁵ But the king replied to them, "I have decided that you must tell me the dream and also tell me what it means. If you do not do this, I will cut you into pieces and turn your houses into piles of dung! ⁶ But if you tell me what I dreamed and what it means, I will reward you. I will give you gifts and a reward and great honor. So tell me what I dreamed and what it means."

ULB:

⁵ The king replied to the wise men, "This matter has been settled. If you do not reveal the dream to me and interpret it, your bodies will be torn apart and your houses made into rubbish heaps. ⁶ But if you will tell me the dream and its meaning, you will receive gifts from me, a reward, and great honor. So tell to me the dream and its meaning."

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [reveal, revelation](#)
- [dream](#)
- [interpret, interpretation](#)
- [reward](#)
- [honor, to honor](#)

translationNotes:

- **This matter has been settled** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "I have already decided what to do about this matter" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **your bodies will be torn apart and your houses made into rubbish heaps** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "I will command my soldiers to tear your bodies apart and to make your houses into rubbish heaps" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **you will receive gifts from me** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "I will give you gifts" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 2:7-9

UDB:

⁷ Again they replied, “Tell us what you dreamed, and we will tell you what it means.”

⁸ The king replied, “I know that you are just trying to get more time because you know that I will do to you what I said that I would do. ⁹ If you do not tell me what I dreamed, you know what I promised to do to you. I think that you have all agreed to tell me lies and other wicked things before your time is up. So then, you have only one choice. Tell me the dream, and I will know you can tell me what it means.”

ULB:

⁷ They replied again and said, “Let the king tell us, his servants, the dream and we will tell you its meaning.” ⁸ The king answered, “I know for certain that you want more time because you see how firm my decision is about this. ⁹ But if you do not tell me the dream, there is only one sentence for you. You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words that you agreed together to say to me until I change my mind. So then, tell me the dream, and then I will know you can interpret it for me.”

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [dream](#)
- [deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive](#)
- [mind](#)

translationNotes:

- **Let the king tell us** - The wise men addressed the king in the third person as a sign of respect. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **you see how firm my decision is about this** - A decision that will not be changed is spoken of as something firm. AT: “you see that I will not change my decision about this” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **there is only one sentence for you** - “there is only one punishment for you”
- **false and deceptive words** - These two words mean approximately the same thing and emphasize that these are “lies intended to deceive.” (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)

- Daniel 02 General Notes
- Daniel 02 Translation Questions

Daniel 2:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ The wise men replied to the king, "There is no one on the earth who can do what you ask! There is no king, even a great and mighty king, who has ever asked his astrologers or those who claim to speak with the dead, or wise men like ourselves to do something like that! ¹¹ What you are asking us to do is impossible. Only the gods can tell you what you dreamed, and they do not live among us!"

ULB:

¹⁰ The wise men replied to the king, "There is not a man on earth able to meet the king's demand. There is no great and powerful king who has demanded such a thing from any magician, or from anyone who claims to speak with the dead, or from a wise man. ¹¹ What the king demands is difficult, and there is no one who can tell it to the king except the gods, and they do not live among humans."

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [magic, magician](#)
- [wise men](#)
- [false god, foreign god, god, goddess](#)

translationNotes:

- **great and powerful** - These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize the greatness of the king's power. AT: "most powerful" (See: [Doublet](#))
- **there is no one who can tell it to the king except the gods** - This is stated in negative form for emphasis. It can be stated in positive form. AT: "only the gods can tell this to the king" (See: [Litotes](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 2:12-13

UDB:

¹² The king was very angry when he heard that, so he commanded his soldiers that they execute all men who were known for their wisdom in all of Babylon. ¹³ According to the king's command, they set out to find Daniel and his friends, to execute them.

ULB:

¹² This made the king angry and very furious, and he gave an order to destroy all those in Babylon who were known for their wisdom. ¹³ So the decree went out that all those who were known for their wisdom were to be put to death. Because of this decree, they searched for Daniel and his friends so they could be put to death.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [decree](#)
- [Daniel](#)

translationNotes:

- **angry and very furious** - These words mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of his anger. AT: “incredibly angry” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **all those in Babylon** - “all the men in Babylon”
- **So the decree went out** - The decree is spoken of as if it was alive and able to go out by itself. AT: “So the king issued a command” or “So the king gave a command” (See: [Personification](#))
- **all those who were known for their wisdom were to be put to death** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the soldiers were to kill all of the men who were known for their wisdom” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **so they could be put to death** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “in order to kill them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 2:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ Arioch, the commander of the king's guards, came with soldiers to kill everyone in Babylon who was considered to be wise. So Daniel spoke to him very wisely and tactfully. ¹⁵ Daniel asked the captain Arioch, "Why has the king made a decree that must be carried out so quickly?" So Arioch told Daniel all that had happened. ¹⁶ Daniel went to talk with the king and requested an appointment with the king so that he could tell the king what the dream was and what it meant.

ULB:

¹⁴ Then Daniel replied with prudence and discretion to Arioch the commander of the king's bodyguard, who had come to kill all those in Babylon who were known for their wisdom. ¹⁵ Daniel asked the king's commander, "Why is the king's decree so urgent?" So Arioch told Daniel what had happened. ¹⁶ Then Daniel went in and requested an appointment with the king so that he could present the interpretation to the king.

translationWords:

- Daniel
- commander, command
- king
- Babylon, Babylonian
- wise, wisdom
- decree
- interpret, interpretation

translationNotes:

- **prudence and discretion** - These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize the greatness of his prudence. AT: "caution and careful judgment" (See: [Doublet](#))
- **Arioch** - This is the name of the king's commander. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **bodyguard** - This is a group of men whose job is to protect the king.
- **who had come to kill** - "who the king had sent out to kill"
- **Daniel went in** - Daniel probably went to the palace. AT: "Daniel went to the palace" or "Daniel went to talk with the king" (UDB) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **requested an appointment with the king** - "asked for a set time to meet with the king"

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 2:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ Daniel went to his house and he told his friends Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah what had happened. ¹⁸ He urged them to ask God, who lives in heaven, to help them by telling them the secret of the dream of the king so that they and the other men in Babylon known for wisdom would not be put to death.

ULB:

¹⁷ Then Daniel went to his house and explained to Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, what had happened. ¹⁸ He urged them to seek mercy from the God of heaven concerning this mystery so that he and they might not be killed with the rest of the men of Babylon who were known for their wisdom.

translationWords:

- Daniel
- Hananiah
- Mishael
- Azariah
- mercy, merciful
- God
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- mystery, hidden truth
- Babylon, Babylonian
- wise, wisdom

translationNotes:

- **his house** - This is referring to Daniel's house.
- **what had happened** - "about the king's decree"
- **He urged them to seek mercy** - "He begged them to pray for mercy"
- **so that he and they might not be killed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "so that the king would not kill them" or "so that the king's bodyguard would not kill them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 02 General Notes](#)

- Daniel 02 Translation Questions

Daniel 2:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ That night God gave Daniel a vision, and in that vision the secret was made known to him. Then Daniel praised God ²⁰ saying,

”We praise the name of the true God forever
because he owns all wisdom and power.

ULB:

¹⁹ That night the mystery was revealed to Daniel in a vision. Then Daniel praised the God of heaven ²⁰ and said,

”Praise the name of God forever and ever;
for wisdom and power belong to him.

translationWords:

- [reveal, revelation](#)
- [Daniel](#)
- [vision](#)
- [praise](#)
- [God](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [name](#)
- [forever](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [power, powers](#)

translationNotes:

- **That night the mystery was revealed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “That night God revealed the mystery” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the mystery** - This is referring to the king’s dream and its meaning.
- **Praise the name of God** - Here “name” refers to God himself. AT: “Praise God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)

- Daniel 02 General Notes
- Daniel 02 Translation Questions

Daniel 2:21-22

UDB:

²¹ He makes the time move forward, and he owns the seasons.

He removes every king when he chooses and gives new kings their kingdom.

He gives wisdom to some, and people become wise.

He teaches knowledge to those who understand.

²² He reveals to us things that are deep and hidden.

He can do this because he knows everything that the darkness hides from us,

and because the light comes from where he lives.

ULB:

²¹ He changes the times

and seasons;

he removes kings

and places kings on their thrones.

He gives wisdom to the wise

and knowledge to those who have understanding.

²² He reveals the deep and hidden things

because he knows what is in the darkness,

and the light lives with him.

translationWords:

- king
- throne
- wise, wisdom
- reveal, revelation
- darkness
- light

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses are also part of Daniel's prayer.
- **he removes kings** - "he takes away kings' authority to rule"
- **places kings on their thrones** - Here being on the "throne" refers to ruling over a kingdom.
AT: "makes new kings rule over their kingdoms" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the light lives with him** - "the light comes from where God is"

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 2:23**UDB:**

²³ God, whom my ancestors worshiped,

I thank you and I praise you

because you have caused me to be wise and made me strong.

You have told me what my friends and I asked you to tell us,

and you have revealed to us what the king demanded to know.”

ULB:

²³ God of my ancestors, I thank you and praise you

for the wisdom and power you gave to me.

Now you have made known to me what we requested from you;

you made known to us the matter that concerns the king.”

translationWords:

- God
- praise
- wise, wisdom
- power, powers
- pray, prayer
- king

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This verse is also part of Daniel’s prayer. He stops addressing God in the third person and switches to the more personal second person. (See: **First, Second or Third Person**)
- **made known to me what we requested from you** - “told me what my friends and I asked you to tell us” (UDB)
- **made known to us the matter that concerns the king** - “told us what the king wants to know”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 2:24**UDB:**

²⁴ Then Daniel went to Arioch, the man whom the king had appointed to execute everyone known to be wise in Babylon. He said to him, “Do not kill those men of wisdom. Take me to the king and I will tell him what his dream means.”

ULB:

²⁴ Then Daniel went in to see Arioch (the one the king appointed to kill everyone who was wise in Babylon). He went and said to him, “Do not kill the wise men in Babylon. Take me to the king and I will show the king the interpretation of his dream.”

translationWords:

- [Daniel](#)
- [king](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [dream](#)

translationNotes:

- **Arioch** - This is the name of the king’s commander. See how you translated this name in [2:14](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **everyone who was wise** - “the wise men”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 2:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ So Arioch quickly took Daniel to the king. He said to the king, “I have found one of the men whom we brought from Judah who can tell you what your dream means!”

²⁶ The king said to Daniel (whose name was now Belteshazzar), “Can you tell me what I dreamed and what it means?”

ULB:

²⁵ Then Arioch quickly brought in Daniel before the king and said, “I have found among the exiles of Judah a man who will reveal the meaning of the king’s dream.” ²⁶ The king said to Daniel (who was called Belteshazzar), “Are you able to tell me the dream that I saw and its meaning?”

translationWords:

- [Daniel](#)
- [king](#)
- [exile, the Exile](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [reveal, revelation](#)
- [dream](#)

translationNotes:

- **Belteshazzar** - This was the name the Babylonians gave to Daniel. See how you translated this name in [1:7](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 2:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ Daniel replied, "There is no one to help, even those who claim to be wise and those who claim to consult with the dead. No one can help, none of the magicians or astrologers. None of these can discover the secrets of your dream. ²⁸ But there is a God in heaven who reveals secrets, and he has shown in your dream what will happen in the future. Now I will tell you what you dreamed and the vision you saw as you were lying on your bed.

ULB:

²⁷ Daniel answered the king and said, "The mystery that the king has asked about cannot be revealed by those who have wisdom, nor by those who claim to speak with the dead, nor by magicians, and not by astrologers. ²⁸ Nevertheless, there is a God who lives in the heavens, who reveals mysteries, and he has made known to you, King Nebuchadnezzar, what will happen in the days to come. These were your dream and the visions of your mind as you lay on your bed.

translationWords:

- Daniel
- king
- mystery, hidden truth
- reveal, revelation
- wise, wisdom
- death, die, dead
- magic, magician
- learned men, astrologers
- God
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Nebuchadnezzar
- dream
- vision
- mind

translationNotes:

- **The mystery that the king has asked about ... not by astrologers** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "Those who have wisdom, those who claim to speak with the dead, magicians, and astrologers cannot reveal the mystery about which the king has asked" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **The mystery that the king has asked about** - This phrase refers to the king's dream.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 2:29-30**UDB:**

²⁹ O king, while you were sleeping, you dreamed about events that will happen in the future. The one who reveals mysteries has shown you what is going to happen. ³⁰ It is not because I am wiser than anyone else on earth that I know the meaning of this mysterious dream. It is because God wanted you to understand your deep thoughts hidden in the vision he gave you.

ULB:

²⁹ As for you, king, your thoughts on your bed were about things to come, and the one who reveals mysteries has made known to you what is about to happen. ³⁰ As for me, this mystery was not revealed to me because of any wisdom that I have more than any other living person. This mystery was revealed to me so that you, king, may understand the meaning, and so that you may know the thoughts deep within you.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [reveal, revelation](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Daniel continues talking to the king.
- **the one who reveals mysteries** - This phrase refers to God. AT: “God, who reveals mysteries” or “God, who makes mysteries known” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **this mystery was not revealed to me** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God did not reveal this mystery to me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **This mystery was revealed to me so that you** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “He revealed the mystery to me so that you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **know the thoughts deep within you** - This phrase is using the word “you” referring to the person’s mind. AT: “know the thoughts deep inside your mind” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 2:31-33**UDB:**

³¹ O king, in your vision you saw in front of you a huge and terrifying statue of a man. It was shining very brightly, and it was frightening and awesome. ³² The head of the statue was made of pure gold. Its chest and arms were made of silver. Its belly and thighs were made of bronze. ³³ Its legs were made of iron and its feet were a mixture of clay and iron.

ULB:

³¹ King, you looked up and you saw a large statue. This statue, which was very powerful and bright, stood before you. Its brightness was terrifying. ³² The head of the statue was made of fine gold. Its breast and arms were of silver. Its middle and its thighs were made of bronze, ³³ and its legs were made of iron. Its feet were made partly of iron and partly of clay.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [terror, terrify](#)
- [gold](#)
- [silver](#)
- [bronze](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Daniel continues talking to the king.
- **was made of fine gold** - “was of fine gold” or “was fine gold”
- **were made partly of iron and partly of clay** - “were partly of iron and partly of clay” or “were partly iron and partly clay”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 2:34-35**UDB:**

³⁴ As you watched, someone cut a stone from a mountain, but it was not a human who cut it. The stone tumbled down and smashed the statue's feet that were made of iron and clay. It smashed them to bits. ³⁵ Then the rest of the statue collapsed into a big heap of iron, clay, bronze, silver, and gold. The pieces of the statue were as small as bits of chaff on the ground where it is threshed, and the wind blew away all the tiny pieces. There was nothing left. But the stone that smashed the statue became a large mountain that covered the whole earth.

ULB:

³⁴ You looked up, and a stone was cut out, although not by human hands, and it struck the statue on its feet of iron and clay, and it shattered them. ³⁵ Then the iron, clay, bronze, silver, and gold at the same time were broken into pieces and became like the chaff of the threshing floors in the summer. The wind carried them away and there was no trace of them left. But the stone that struck the statue became a great mountain and filled the whole earth.

translationWords:

- bronze
- silver
- gold
- like, likeness
- chaff
- thresh, threshing
- earth, earthly

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Daniel continues talking to the king.
- **a stone was cut out, although not by human hands, and it** - This can be stated in active form if it is divided into two sentences. AT: "someone cut a stone from a mountain, but it was not a human who cut it. The stone" (UDB) (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **like the chaff of the threshing floors in the summer** - This phrase is comparing the pieces of the statue to small and light things which could be blown away by the wind. AT: "like dry pieces of grass blowing away in the wind" (See: [Simile](#))
- **there was no trace of them left** - This can be stated in positive form. AT: "they were completely gone" (See: [Litotes](#))
- **filled the whole earth** - "spread over the whole earth"

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 2:36-38**UDB:**

³⁶ That was what you dreamed. Now we will tell you what it means. ³⁷ You are a king who rules over other kings. The God who rules in heaven has caused you to rule over them and has given you great power and has honored you. ³⁸ He has caused you to be the ruler over all people so that even the animals and birds belong to you. You are the head of the statue, that head made of gold.

ULB:

³⁶ This was your dream. Now we will tell the king the meaning. ³⁷ You, king, are king of the kings to whom the God of heaven has given the kingdom, the power, the strength, and the honor. ³⁸ He has given into your hand the place where the human beings live. He has given over the animals of the fields and the birds of the heavens into your hand, and he has made you rule over them all. You are the statue's head of gold.

translationWords:

- dream
- king
- God
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- kingdom
- power, powers
- honor, to honor
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- life, live, living, alive
- ruler, rulers, rule
- head
- gold

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Daniel continues talking to the king.
- **Now we will tell the king** - Here “we” refers only to Daniel. He may have used to plural form in humility to avoid taking credit for knowing the meaning of the dream that God had revealed to him. (See: **Pronouns**)
- **king of the kings** - “the most important king” or “a king who rules over other kings” (UDB)
- **the power, the strength** - These words mean basically the same thing. (See: **Doublet**)
- **He has given into your hand the place** - Here “hand” refers to control. AT: “He has given you control over the place” (See: **Metonymy**)

- **the place where the human beings live** - The place is used to represent the people who live there. AT: “the people of the land” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **He has given over the animals ... into your hand** - Here “hand” refers to control. AT: “He has given you control over the animals of the fields and the birds of the heavens” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **birds of the heavens** - Here “heavens” is used in the sense of “skies.”
- **You are the statue’s head of gold** - In the king’s dream the statue’s head represents the king. AT: “The golden head symbolizes you” or “The golden head is a symbol of you and your power” (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 2:39

UDB:

³⁹ After your kingdom ends, there will be another great kingdom, but it will not be as great as yours. The silver parts of the statue represent that kingdom. Then there will be a third great kingdom whose king will rule over the whole earth. The bronze parts of the statue represent that third kingdom.

ULB:

³⁹ After you, another kingdom will arise that is inferior to you, and yet a third kingdom of bronze will rule over all the earth.

translationWords:

- [kingdom](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [ruler, rulers, rule](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Daniel continues talking to the king.
- **another kingdom will arise** - In the king's dream his kingdom is gold so an inferior kingdom would be silver. AT: "another kingdom, which is of silver, will arise" or "another kingdom, which is represented by the silver parts of the statue, will arise" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Symbolic Language](#))
- **yet a third kingdom of bronze** - "yet kingdom number three, which is of bronze," or "then still another kingdom, which is represented by the bronze parts of the statue" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Symbolic Language](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 2:40**UDB:**

⁴⁰ After that kingdom ends, there will be a fourth great kingdom. The iron parts of the statue represent that kingdom. The army of that kingdom will smash the previous kingdoms, just like iron smashes everything that it strikes.

ULB:

⁴⁰ There will be a fourth kingdom, strong as iron, because iron breaks other things into pieces and shatters everything. It will shatter all these things and crush them.

translationWords:

- [kingdom](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Daniel continues talking to the king.
- **There will be a fourth kingdom** - “There will be a kingdom number four” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **strong as iron** - The fourth kingdom is spoken of as being as strong as iron. (See: [Simile](#))
- **It will shatter all these things and crush them** - This symbolic language means the fourth kingdom will defeat and replace the other kingdoms. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **all these things** - “the previous kingdoms” (UDB)

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 2:41-43

UDB:

⁴¹ The feet and toes of the statue that you saw were a mixture of iron and clay, showing that the kingdom they represent will later be divided. ⁴² Some parts of that kingdom will be as strong as iron, but some parts will not remain together, just as iron and clay do not stay together when mixed. ⁴³ The mixture of iron and clay in the statue also means that this kingdom will come apart, because the different people groups will not work together, just as clay does not stick to iron.

ULB:

⁴¹ Just as you saw, the feet and toes were partly made of baked clay and partly made of iron, so it will be a divided kingdom; some of the strength of iron will be in it, just as you saw iron mixed with the soft clay. ⁴² As the toes of the feet were partly made of iron and partly made of clay, so the kingdom will be partly strong and partly brittle. ⁴³ As you saw the iron mixed with soft clay, so the people will be a mixture; they will not stay together, just as iron does not mix with clay.

translationWords:

- [kingdom](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Daniel continues talking to the king.
- **Just as you saw** - Nebuchadnezzar saw that the feet consisted of clay and iron. He did not see the process of making the feet.
- **were partly made of baked clay and partly made of iron** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “were a mixture of baked clay and iron” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **they will not stay together** - “they will not remain united”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 2:44-45**UDB:**

⁴⁴ But while those kings are ruling, God who rules in heaven will establish a kingdom that will never end. No one will ever defeat its king. He will completely destroy all those kingdoms, but his kingdom will remain forever. ⁴⁵ That is the meaning of the stone that someone cut from the mountain, the stone that will crush to tiny bits the statue that is made of iron, bronze, silver, and gold. God, the great God, has told you what will happen in the future. The dream he gave you will come true. Its meaning is true, as I have told it to you.”

ULB:

⁴⁴ In the days of those kings, the God of heaven will set up a kingdom that will never be destroyed, nor will it be conquered by another people. It will break the other kingdoms into pieces and put an end to all of them, and it will remain forever. ⁴⁵ Just as you saw, a stone was cut out of the mountain, but not by human hands. It broke the iron, bronze, clay, silver, and gold into pieces. The great God has made known to you, king, what will happen after this. The dream is true and this interpretation is reliable.”

translationWords:

- king
- God
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- kingdom
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- forever
- stone, stoning
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- bronze
- silver
- gold
- dream
- true, truth, come true
- interpret, interpretation

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Daniel continues talking to the king.
- **In the days of those kings** - Here “those kings” refers to the rulers of the kingdoms symbolized by the different parts of the statue.

- **that will never be destroyed, nor will it be conquered by another people** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “that no one will ever destroy, and that another people never conquer” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **a stone was cut out of the mountain, but not by human hands** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “someone cut a stone from the mountain, but it was not a human who cut it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **reliable** - trustworthy and correct

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 2:46-47**UDB:**

⁴⁶ Then King Nebuchadnezzar lay down on the ground in front of Daniel as an act of great respect. He commanded his people to burn incense and to burn an offering of grain in honor of Daniel. ⁴⁷ The king said to Daniel, “Your God has enabled you to tell me the meaning of this dream, so now I truly know that your God is greater than all the other gods, and King over all other kings. He reveals secrets; he makes known mysteries no one else could know.”

ULB:

⁴⁶ King Nebuchadnezzar fell on his face before Daniel and honored him; he commanded that an offering be made and that incense be offered up to him. ⁴⁷ The king said to Daniel, “Truly your God is the God of gods, the Lord of kings, and the one who reveals mysteries, for you have been able to reveal this mystery.”

translationWords:

- king
- Nebuchadnezzar
- Daniel
- honor, to honor
- sacrifice, offering
- incense
- God
- Lord
- reveal, revelation
- mystery, hidden truth

translationNotes:

- **fell on his face** - This symbolic act showed that the king was honoring Daniel. AT: “lay down with his face on the ground” (See: **Symbolic Action**)
- **an offering be made and that incense be offered up to him** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “his servants make an offering and offer up incense to Daniel” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **Truly your God** - “It is true that your God”
- **the God of gods, the Lord of kings** - “greater than all the other gods, and King over all other kings” (UDB)
- **the one who reveals mysteries** - Translate “the one who reveals mysteries” as in **2:29**.
- **to reveal this mystery** - “to reveal the mystery of my dream”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 2:48-49

UDB:

⁴⁸ Then the king gave many gifts to Daniel, and he also appointed him to rule over the entire province of Babylon. He made him to be the chief governor over all the wisest men in Babylon. ⁴⁹ Daniel asked the king to appoint Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego to serve in important positions as administrators in the province of Babylon. But Daniel remained in the king's palace and served the king there.

ULB:

⁴⁸ Then the king made Daniel highly honored and gave him many wonderful gifts. He made him ruler over the whole province of Babylon. Daniel became chief governor over the wisest men of Babylon. ⁴⁹ Daniel made a request of the king, and the king appointed Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego to be administrators over the province of Babylon. But Daniel remained in the king's palace.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [Daniel](#)
- [honor, to honor](#)
- [marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished](#)
- [ruler, rulers, rule](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [chief](#)
- [governor, govern, proconsul, government](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [administration, administrator](#)

translationNotes:

- **He made him ruler** - "The king made Daniel the ruler"
- **Shadrach ... Meshach ... Abednego** - These were the Babylonian names of the three Jewish men who were brought to Babylon with Daniel. See how you translated these names in [1:7](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 02 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 02 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 3 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The king's new idol

Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego refused to worship the new idol. In the ancient Near East, refusing to worship the king was a sign of rebellion against the king. It was often considered the crime of treason. (See: [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#))

The furnace

There was a fourth person with them in the furnace and because of this they were not hurt. Most scholars believe this to be Jesus before he was born.

Links:

- [Daniel 03:01 Notes](#)

Daniel 3:1-2

UDB:

¹ King Nebuchadnezzar made a golden statue. It was twenty-seven meters tall and three meters wide. He set it up in the plain of Dura in the province of Babylon. ² Then he sent messages to all the provincial governors, the regional governors, and the local governors, the counselors, the treasurers, the judges, the magistrates, and all the high officials of the provinces. He told them to come to celebrate the new statue that he had set up to honor the god that it represented.

ULB:

3 ¹ King Nebuchadnezzar made a gold statue that was sixty cubits tall and six cubits wide. He set it up in the Plain of Dura in the province of Babylon. ² Then Nebuchadnezzar sent messages out to gather together the provincial governors, regional governors, and local governors, together with the counselors, treasurers, judges, magistrates, and all the high officials of the provinces to come to the dedication of the statue that he had set up.

translationWords:

- king
- Nebuchadnezzar
- gold
- province, provincial
- Babylon, Babylonian
- governor, govern, proconsul, government
- counsel, counselor, advice, advisor
- judge
- magistrate, magistrates
- dedicate, dedication

translationNotes:

- **Nebuchadnezzar made a gold statue ... He set it up** - That Nebuchadnezzar's men made and set up a statue by his command is spoken of as if Nebuchadnezzar had made and set up a statue. AT: "Nebuchadnezzar commanded his men to make a gold statue ... They set it up" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **sixty cubits tall and six cubits wide** - "about 27 meters tall and almost 3 meters wide" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **Plain of Dura** - This is a location within the kingdom of Babylon. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

- **provincial governors ... regional governors ... local governors** - These are officials who have authority over different sizes of territory.
- **treasurers** - These officials are in charge of money.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 03 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 3:3-5**UDB:**

³ When they all arrived, they were all standing in front of that statue.

⁴ A person on the royal staff shouted out the king's new law to everyone, "You people who come from many countries and who speak many languages, listen to what the king has commanded! ⁵ When you hear the sound of the horns, flutes, zithers, lyres, harps, and other flutes, and all the music they will play, you must lie down on the ground and honor the golden statue that King Nebuchadnezzar has put up.

ULB:

³ Then the provincial governors, regional governors, and local governors, together with the counselors, treasurers, judges, magistrates, and all the high officials of the provinces gathered together to the dedication of the statue that Nebuchadnezzar had set up. They stood before it. ⁴ Then a herald loudly shouted, "You are commanded, peoples, nations, and languages, ⁵ that at the time you hear the sound of the horns, flutes, zithers, lyres, harps, and pipes, and all kinds of music, you must fall down and prostrate yourselves to the golden statue that King Nebuchadnezzar has set up.

translationWords:

- province, provincial
- governor, govern, proconsul, government
- counsel, counselor, advice, advisor
- judge
- magistrate, magistrates
- dedicate, dedication
- Nebuchadnezzar
- command, to command, commandment
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- nation
- trumpet
- lute, lyre
- harp
- flute, pipe
- gold
- king

translationNotes:

- **the provincial governors, regional governors, ... officials of the provinces** - Translate this list as in [3:2](#).
- **the statue that Nebuchadnezzar had set up** - That Nebuchadnezzar's men had set up the statue is spoken of as if Nebuchadnezzar had set it up. AT: "the statue that Nebuchadnezzar's men had set up" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **herald** - This person is an official messenger for the king.
- **You are commanded** - This can be stated in active form. "The king commands you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **peoples, nations, and languages** - Here "nations" and "languages" represent people from different nations who speak different languages. AT: "people from different nations and who speak different languages" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **zithers** - These are musical instruments similar to harps. They are shaped like triangles and have four strings.
- **fall down** - Here "fall down" means "quickly lie down"
- **prostrate yourselves to** - "stretch yourselves out on the ground face down in worship of" ([Symbolic Action](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 03 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 3:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Anyone who refuses to do that will be thrown into a blazing fire.”

⁷ So all those people who had gathered from the many people and nations, who were speaking various languages, when they heard the instruments play, they laid themselves down on the ground and gave their worship and said words of praise to the statue.

ULB:

⁶ Whoever does not fall down and worship, at that very moment, will be thrown into a blazing furnace.” ⁷ So when all the peoples heard the sounds of the horns, flutes, zithers, lyres, harps, and pipes, and all kinds of music, all the peoples, nations, and languages fell down and prostrated themselves to the golden statue that Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up.

translationWords:

- worship
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- flute, pipe
- lute, lyre
- harp
- nation
- gold
- Nebuchadnezzar
- king

translationNotes:

- **Whoever does not fall down and worship, at that very moment, will be thrown into a blazing furnace** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The soldiers will throw into a blazing furnace anyone who does not fall down and worship the statue at the very moment they hear the music” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **fall down** - Here “fall down” means “quickly lie down”
- **blazing furnace** - This is a large room filled with a hot fire.
- **all the peoples, nations, and languages** - Here “all” that means all the people who were present.
- **peoples, nations, and languages** - Here “nations” and “languages” represent people from different nations who speak different languages. See how you translated this in **3:4**. AT: “people from different nations and who spoke different languages” (See: **Metonymy**)

- **the horns, flutes ... and pipes** - These are musical instruments. Translate this list as you did in 3:5.
- **fell down** - Here “fell down” means “quickly lay down”
- **prostrated themselves to** - “stretched themselves out on the ground face down in worship of” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))
- **the golden statue that Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up** - That Nebuchadnezzar’s men had set up the statue is spoken of as if Nebuchadnezzar had set it up. AT: “the golden statue that King Nebuchadnezzar’s men had set up” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 03 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 3:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ But some Chaldeans went to the king. ⁹ They reported to him, "O king, may you never die! ¹⁰ You decreed that every person who hears the sound of those instruments should lie down on the ground and honor the golden statue.

ULB:

⁸ Now at this time certain Chaldeans came and brought accusations against the Jews. ⁹ They said to Nebuchadnezzar the king, "King, live forever! ¹⁰ You, king, have made a decree that every person who hears the sounds of the horns, flutes, zithers, lyres, harps, and pipes, and all kinds of music, must fall down and prostrate himself to the golden statue.

translationWords:

- Chaldea, Chaldean
- accuse, accusation, accuser
- Jew, Jewish, Jews
- Nebuchadnezzar
- king
- life, live, living, alive
- forever
- trumpet
- flute, pipe
- lute, lyre
- harp
- gold

translationNotes:

- **Now** - This word is used to mark a break in the main story line. Here the writer tells about some new people in the story.
- **King, live forever** - This was a common greeting to the king.
- **the horns, flutes ... and pipes** - These are musical instruments. Translate this list as you did in 3:5.
- **fall down** - Here "fall down" means "quickly lie down"
- **prostrate himself to** - "stretch himself out on the ground face down in worship of" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 03 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 3:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ You also decreed that anyone refusing to do that would be thrown into a blazing fire. ¹² There are some men from Judah that you appointed to be officials in the province of Babylon who have paid no attention to your decree. Their names are Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. They have refused to worship your gods and the golden statue that you have set up.”

ULB:

¹¹ Whoever does not fall down and worship must be thrown into a blazing furnace. ¹² Now there are certain Jews whom you have appointed over the affairs of the province of Babylon; their names are Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. These men, king, pay no attention to you. They will not worship or serve your gods, or prostrate themselves before the golden statue you have set up.”

translationWords:

- worship
- Jew, Jewish, Jews
- appoint, appointed
- province, provincial
- Babylon, Babylonian
- king
- serve, service
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess

translationNotes:

- **Whoever does not fall down and worship must be thrown into a blazing furnace** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Soldiers must throw into a blazing furnace anyone who does not lie down on the ground and worship” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **fall down** - Here “fall down” means “quickly lie down”
- **blazing furnace** - This is a large room filled with a hot fire. Translate this as you did in [3:6](#).
- **affairs** - “matters” or “business”
- **Shadrach ... Meshach ... Abednego** - These are the Babylonian names of the three Jewish friends of Daniel. See how you translated these names in [1:7](#).
- **pay no attention to you** - “do not pay attention to you”
- **prostrate themselves** - “stretch themselves out on the ground face down in worship” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))
- **the golden statue you have set up** - That Nebuchadnezzar’s men have set up the statue is spoken of as if Nebuchadnezzar has set it up. AT: “the golden statue your men have set up” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 03 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 3:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ When he heard this, Nebuchadnezzar became very angry. He commanded his soldiers to bring in Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. So they brought them to the king. ¹⁴ Nebuchadnezzar said to them, "Have you decided that you will not worship my gods or the golden statue that I have set up?"

ULB:

¹³ Then Nebuchadnezzar, filled with anger and rage, commanded that Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego be brought to him. So they brought these men before the king. ¹⁴ Nebuchadnezzar said to them, "Have you made your minds up, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, that you will not worship my gods or prostrate yourselves to the golden statue that I have set up?"

translationWords:

- Nebuchadnezzar
- angry, anger
- rage
- command, to command, commandment
- worship
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- gold

translationNotes:

- **filled with anger and rage** - Nebuchadnezzar's anger and rage were so intense that they are spoken of as if they had filled him up. Here "anger" and "rage" mean about the same thing and are used to emphasize how upset the king was. AT: "extremely angry" (See: **Metaphor** and **Doublet**)
- **Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego** - These are the Babylonian names of the three Jewish friends of Daniel. See how you translated these names in **1:7**.
- **Have you made your minds up** - Here "mind" refers to deciding. To "make up your mind" is an idiom that means to firmly decide. AT: "Have you firmly decided" (See: **Metonymy** and **Idiom**)
- **prostrate yourselves to** - "stretch yourselves out on the ground face down in worship of" (See: **Symbolic Action**)
- **the golden statue that I have set up** - That Nebuchadnezzar's men have set up the statue is spoken of as if Nebuchadnezzar has set it up. AT: "the golden statue that my men have set up" (See: **Metonymy**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 03 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 3:15**UDB:**

¹⁵ I will give you one more chance. If you bow down to worship the statue that I have set up when you hear the sounds of the musical instruments, fine. But if you refuse, you will be thrown into a blazing fire. Then who is the god who can rescue you from my power?"

ULB:

¹⁵ Now if you are ready—when you hear the sounds of the horns, flutes, zithers, lyres, harps, and pipes, and all kinds of music—to fall down and prostrate yourselves to the statue that I have made, all will be well. But if you do not worship, you will immediately be thrown into a blazing furnace. Who is the god who is able to rescue you out of my hands?"

translationWords:

- flute, pipe
- lute, lyre
- harp
- worship
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- hand, right hand, to hand over

translationNotes:

- **the horns, flutes ... and pipes** - These are musical instruments. See how you translated this list in 3:5.
- **fall down** - Here “fall down” means “quickly lie down”
- **prostrate yourselves to** - stretch yourselves out on the ground face down in worship of” (See: **Symbolic Action**)
- **all will be well** - “there will no longer be a problem” or “you will be free to go”
- **the statue that I have made** - That Nebuchadnezzar’s men have made the statue is spoken of as if Nebuchadnezzar has made it. AT: “the statue that my men have made” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **you will immediately be thrown into a blazing furnace** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “my soldiers will immediately throw you into a blazing furnace” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **blazing furnace** - This is a large room filled with a hot fire. Translate this as you did in 3:6.
- **Who is the god ... my hands?** - The king does not expect an answer. He is threatening the three men. AT: “No god is able to rescue you from my power!” (See: **Rhetorical Question**)
- **out of my hands** - Here “hands” refers to power to punish. AT: “from my punishment” (See: **Metonymy**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 03 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 3:16-18**UDB:**

¹⁶ Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego replied, "Nebuchadnezzar, we do not need to defend our actions to you in this matter. ¹⁷ If we are thrown into a fire, the God we worship is able to rescue us. He has the power to rescue us from you. ¹⁸ But even if he does not rescue us, we will not worship your gods, and we will never honor the statue you have set up."

ULB:

¹⁶ Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego answered the king, "Nebuchadnezzar, we have no need to answer you in this matter. ¹⁷ If there is an answer, it is that our God whom we serve is able to keep us safe from the blazing furnace, and he will rescue us out of your hand, king. ¹⁸ But if not, let it be known to you, king, that we will not worship your gods, and we will not prostrate ourselves to the golden statue you set up."

translationWords:

- king
- Nebuchadnezzar
- God
- serve, service
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- worship
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess

translationNotes:

- **blazing furnace** - This is a large room filled with a hot fire. Translate this as you did in [3:6](#).
- **out of your hand** - Here "hand" refers to power to punish. AT: "from your punishment" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **But if not, let it be known to you, king, that** - "But king, we must let you know that even if our God does not rescue us"
- **prostrate ourselves to** - "stretch ourselves out on the ground face down in worship of" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))
- **the golden statue you set up** - That Nebuchadnezzar's men set up the statue is spoken of as if Nebuchadnezzar set it up. AT: "the golden statue your men set up" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)

- Daniel 03 General Notes
- Daniel 03 Translation Questions

Daniel 3:19-20

UDB:

¹⁹ Then Nebuchadnezzar became extremely angry. His face showed great rage against Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. He gave orders that the fire should be made seven times hotter than usual. ²⁰ After that was done, he ordered some of his strongest soldiers to tie up Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego, and then to throw them into the blazing fire.

ULB:

¹⁹ Then Nebuchadnezzar was filled with rage; the look on his face changed against Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. He commanded that the furnace should be heated seven times hotter than it was normally heated. ²⁰ Then he commanded some very strong men in his army to tie up Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego and to throw them into the blazing furnace.

translationWords:

- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)

translationNotes:

- **Nebuchadnezzar was filled with rage** - The king was so angry that rage is spoken of as if it were filling him up. AT: “Nebuchadnezzar became extremely angry” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **He commanded that the furnace should be heated seven times hotter than it was normally heated** - Here “seven times hotter” is an idiom that means to make it very much hotter. This can be stated in active form. AT: “He commanded his men to make the furnace very much hotter than they normally make it” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 03 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 3:21-23

UDB:

²¹ When the soldiers tied them up and threw them into the furnace, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego were wearing their robes, their tunics, their turbans, and their other clothes. ²² Because the king's orders were given when he was so angry and were to be followed without any delay, and because the fire was so hot, the flames leaped out of the blaze and killed the soldiers that took Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego up into the fire. ²³ So Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, tied up, fell into the burning flames of the fire.

ULB:

²¹ They were tied up still wearing their robes, tunics, turbans, and other clothing, and they were thrown into the blazing furnace. ²² Because the king's command was strictly followed and the furnace was very hot, the flames killed the men who took up Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. ²³ These three men, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, fell into the blazing furnace while they were tied up.

translationWords:

- robe
- tunic
- king
- command, to command, commandment

translationNotes:

- **turbans** - A turban is a head covering made of wrapped cloth.
- **blazing furnace** - This is a large room filled with a hot fire. Translate this as you did in 3:6.
- **Because the king's command was strictly followed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "Because the men did exactly what the king commanded" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 03 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 3:24-25

UDB:

²⁴ But as Nebuchadnezzar was watching, he was shocked. He jumped up and shouted to his advisors, “Did we tie up three men and throw them into the flames?”

They replied, “Yes, O king, we did.”

²⁵ Nebuchadnezzar shouted, “Look! I see four men in the fire! They are not tied with ropes and they are walking around and the flames are not hurting them! The fourth man is shining like a son of the gods!”

ULB:

²⁴ Then Nebuchadnezzar the king was amazed and stood up quickly. He asked his advisors, “Did we not throw three men tied up into the fire?” They replied to the king, “Certainly, king.” ²⁵ He said, “But I see four men who are not tied up walking around in the fire, and they are not hurt. The brilliance of the fourth is like a son of the gods.”

translationWords:

- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [king](#)
- [marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished](#)
- [false god, foreign god, god, goddess](#)

translationNotes:

- **Did we not throw three men tied up into the fire** - “We threw three men tied up into the fire, right”
- **The brilliance of the fourth is like a son of the gods** - The gods were believed to shine brightly with light. AT: “Man four is shining brightly with light as a son of the gods would shine” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 03 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 3:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ Nebuchadnezzar came closer to the edge of the blazing fire and shouted, “Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, you who worship the Most High God, come out of there! Come here!” So they came out and away from the fire.

²⁷ Then all the king’s officials saw them when they came out of the fire. The flames had not harmed them. Not even the hair on their heads was singed, and none of their clothing was scorched. There was not even any smell of smoke on them.

ULB:

²⁶ Then Nebuchadnezzar came near the door of the blazing furnace and called out, “Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, servants of God Most High, come out! Come here!” Then Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego came out of the fire. ²⁷ The provincial governors, regional governors, other governors, and the king’s counselors who had gathered together saw these men. The fire had not hurt their bodies; the hair on their heads was not singed; their robes were not harmed; and there was no smell of fire on them.

translationWords:

- Nebuchadnezzar
- servant, slave, slavery
- Most High
- province, provincial
- governor, govern, proconsul, government
- counsel, counselor, advice, advisor
- robe

translationNotes:

- **The provincial governors, regional governors, other governors** - These are officials who have authority over different sizes of territory. See how you translated these in 3:2.
- **the hair on their heads was not singed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the fire had not singed the hair on their heads” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **singed** - “lightly burned”
- **their robes were not harmed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the fire did not harm their robes” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **there was no smell of fire on them** - “they did not smell like fire”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 03 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 3:28

UDB:

²⁸ Then Nebuchadnezzar said, "We must all praise the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego! He sent one of his messengers to rescue these three men who worship him and trust in him. They ignored the king's command and refused to worship any other god but their own God, even if it cost them their lives.

ULB:

²⁸ Nebuchadnezzar said, "Let us praise the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, who has sent his messenger and given his message to his servants. They trusted in him when they set aside my command, and they gave up their bodies rather than worship or prostrate themselves to any god except their God.

translationWords:

- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [praise](#)
- [God](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [worship](#)
- [false god, foreign god, god, goddess](#)

translationNotes:

- **they set aside my command** - Not obeying the king's command is spoken of as if they had physically moved it away from them. AT: "they ignored my command" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **they gave up their bodies** - This phrase refers to the three men's willingness to die for what they believed. AT: "they were willing to die" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **prostrate themselves to** - "stretch themselves out on the ground face down in honor of" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))
- **any god except their God** - "any other god except their God"

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 03 General Notes](#)

- Daniel 03 Translation Questions

Daniel 3:29-30**UDB:**

²⁹ Therefore I am now making this decree: ‘If any people from any nation, or those who speak any language, say anything against the God who is worshiped by Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, they will be torn to pieces and their houses will be torn down and made into piles of garbage. This decree is made because there is no other god who can rescue people like this!’”

³⁰ Then the king gave Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego positions of greater importance within the province of Babylon.

ULB:

²⁹ Therefore I make a decree that any people, nation, or language that speaks anything against the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego must be torn apart, and that their houses must be made into rubbish heaps because there is no other god who is able to save like this.” ³⁰ Then the king promoted Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego in the province of Babylon.

translationWords:

- decree
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- nation
- God
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- save, safe
- king
- province, provincial
- Babylon, Babylonian

translationNotes:

- **any people, nation, or language ... must be torn apart, and that their houses must be made into rubbish heaps** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “my servants will tear apart any people, nation, or language ... and make their houses into piles of garbage” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **any people, nation, and language that speaks** - Here “nations” and “language” represent people from different nations who speak different languages. See how you translated a similar phrase in [3:4](#). AT: “any people from any nation, or those who speak any language that says” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **speaks anything against the God** - “speaks words that do not respect the God”
- **must be torn apart** - “must have their bodies torn apart”

- **there is no other god who is able to save like this** - This can be stated in positive form. AT: “only their God is able to save like this”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 03 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 03 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart extended quotations, prayers or songs. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 4:3, 34-35, which is are poetic.

Special concepts in this chapter

The king becomes insane

The king went insane until he realized that Yahweh was the ruler over everyone, including him.

Links:

- [Daniel 04:01 Notes](#)

Daniel 4:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Several years after Nebuchadnezzar started to rule, he sent this message to every people, nation, and language in his empire. He wrote,

”I wish that all things will go very well with you!

² I want you to know about all the ways in which God Most High has shown his power, and how he has done so many amazing things for me.

³ He performs great miracles that show his power;

he does wonderful things.

He will always be king;

he will rule from one generation to another without end.”

ULB:

⁴ ¹ King Nebuchadnezzar sent this decree to all peoples, nations, and languages who lived on the earth: ”May your peace increase. ² It has seemed good to me to tell you about the signs and wonders that the Most High has done for me.

³ How great are his signs,

and how mighty are his wonders!

His kingdom is an everlasting kingdom,

and his dominion lasts from generation to generation.”

translationWords:

- king
- Nebuchadnezzar
- decree
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- nation
- peace, peaceful
- miracle, wonder, sign

- [Most High](#)
- [mighty, might](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [everlasting, eternal, eternity](#)
- [dominion](#)
- [generation](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In this chapter, Nebuchadnezzar tells what God did to him. In verses 1-18, Nebuchadnezzar describes in the first person his vision from God. Verses 19-33 switch to the third person to describe the punishment of Nebuchadnezzar. Verses 34-37 change back to first person as Nebuchadnezzar describes his response to God. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **King Nebuchadnezzar sent** - This phrase is referring to the king's messenger as the king himself. AT: "Nebuchadnezzar sent his messengers with" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **peoples, nations, and languages** - Here "nations" and "languages" represent people from different nations who speak different languages. See how you translated this in [3:4](#). AT: "people from different nations and who speak different languages" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **who lived on the earth** - Kings would often exaggerate how wide their kingdom was. Nebuchadnezzar did rule over most of the known world at the time this book was written. AT: "who lived in the kingdom of Babylon" (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **May your peace increase** - This is a common greeting.
- **signs and wonders** - These words share similar meanings and refer to the amazing things that God had done. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **How great are his signs, and how mighty are his wonders!** - Both of these phrases have the same meaning and are used to emphasize how great God's signs and wonders are. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **His kingdom is ... generation to generation** - Both of these phrases have the same meaning and are repeated to emphasize how God's reign is forever. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 4:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ I, Nebuchadnezzar, was living in my palace without a care, and I was enjoying every luxury. ⁵ But one night I had a dream that caused me to be very afraid. I saw visions that terrified me as I lay on my bed. ⁶ So I summoned all those in Babylon who were wise so that they could come and tell me what my dream meant.

ULB:

⁴ I, Nebuchadnezzar, was living happily in my house, and I was enjoying prosperity in my palace. ⁵ But a dream I had made me afraid. As I lay there, the images I saw and the visions in my mind troubled me. ⁶ So I gave a decree to bring before me all the men of Babylon who had wisdom so they could interpret the dream for me.

translationWords:

- Nebuchadnezzar
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- palace
- dream
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- vision
- mind
- trouble, troubles, troubled
- decree
- Babylon, Babylonian
- wise, wisdom
- interpret, interpretation

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In verses 1-18, Nebuchadnezzar describes in the first person his vision from God. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **was living happily ... was enjoying prosperity** - These two phrases are parallel and mean the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **my house ... my palace** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **a dream ... the images ... the visions** - These phrases mean basically the same thing. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **made me afraid ... troubled me** - These phrases are parallel and they mean the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))

- **all the men of Babylon who had wisdom** - “all the wise men of Babylon”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 4:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ All the men who worked magic, those who claimed to speak with the dead, the wise men, and those who made predictions from the stars came to me. I told them what I had dreamed, but they could not tell me what it meant. ⁸ At last, Daniel came to me, and I decided to tell him what I had dreamed. (He is also named Belteshazzar, to honor my own god, and I knew that the spirit of the holy gods was in him).

⁹ I said to him, "Belteshazzar, you are the most important of all my magicians. I know that the spirit of the holy gods is in you and that you can reveal the meaning of any mystery. There is none that is too difficult for you. So tell me what my dream means.

ULB:

⁷ Then came the magicians, those who claimed to speak with the dead, the wise men, and the astrologers. I told them the dream, but they could not interpret it for me. ⁸ But at last Daniel came in—the one who is named Belteshazzar after the name of my god, and in whom is the spirit of the holy gods—and I told him the dream. ⁹ "Belteshazzar, chief of the magicians, I know that the spirit of the holy gods is in you and that no mystery is too difficult for you. Tell me what I saw in my dream and what it means.

translationWords:

- magic, magician
- death, die, dead
- wise, wisdom
- learned men, astrologers
- dream
- interpret, interpretation
- Daniel
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- spirit, spiritual
- holy, holiness
- chief
- mystery, hidden truth

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In verses 1-18, Nebuchadnezzar describes in the first person his vision from God. (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

- **who is named Belteshazzar** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “who I named Belteshazzar” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Belteshazzar** - This was the name the Babylonians gave to Daniel. See how you translated this name in [1:7](#).
- **the spirit of the holy gods** - Nebuchadnezzar believed that Daniel’s power came from the false gods that Nebuchadnezzar worshiped.
- **no mystery is too difficult for you** - The can be stated in positive form. AT: “you understand the meaning of every mystery”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 4:10-12**UDB:**

¹⁰ This is what I dreamed while I was lying in bed: I saw a large tree growing in the middle of the earth. ¹¹ The tree was very strong and had grown very tall. It seemed that its top reached up to the sky and that everyone in the world could see it. ¹² It had beautiful leaves, and it had fruit for people and all creatures to eat. Wild animals rested in its shade and birds built nests in its branches. All the living creatures got food from that tree.

ULB:

¹⁰ These were the sights that I saw in my mind as I lay upon my bed: I looked, and there was a tree in the middle of the earth, and its height was very great. ¹¹ The tree grew and became strong. Its top reached to the heavens, and it could be seen to the ends of the whole earth. ¹² Its leaves were beautiful, its fruit was abundant, and on it was food for all. The wild animals found shade under it, and the birds of the heavens lived in its branches. All living creatures were fed from it.

translationWords:

- mind
- earth, earthly
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- creature

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In verses 1-18, Nebuchadnezzar describes in the first person his vision from God. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **sights** - things that you see
- **its height was very great** - “it was very tall”
- **Its top reached to the heavens ... it could be seen to the ends of the whole earth** - This is symbolic language that exaggerates how tall and how well-known the tree was. AT: “It seemed that its top reached up to the sky and that everyone in the world could see it” (UDB) (See: [Symbolic Language](#) and [Hyperbole](#))
- **its fruit was abundant** - “there was a lot of fruit on the tree”
- **was food for all** - “was food for all people and animals”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 4:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ "While I was lying in bed, I saw in my dream a holy angel come down from heaven. ¹⁴ He shouted, 'Cut down that tree, and cut off its branches. Strip off all of its leaves, and scatter its fruit. Chase away the animals that are lying in the shade of the tree and the birds that are in its branches.

ULB:

¹³ I saw in my mind as I lay on my bed, and a holy messenger came down from the heavens. ¹⁴ He shouted and said, 'Chop down the tree and cut off its branches, strip off its leaves, and scatter its fruit. Let the animals flee from under it and the birds fly away from its branches.

translationWords:

- [mind](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In verses 1-18, Nebuchadnezzar describes in the first person his vision from God. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **I saw in my mind** - This refers to seeing a dream or vision. AT: "I saw in my dream"
- **He shouted and said** - It can be made clear that the holy messenger was speaking to more than one person. AT: "He shouted to some people and said" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **Let the animals flee ... from its branches** - "The animals will flee from under it and the bird will fly away from its branches"

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 4:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ But leave the tree stump and the roots in the ground. Fasten a band of iron and bronze around the stump and let it stay there with grass around it.

¹⁶ Cause that man to live out in the fields among the animals and plants. Cause the dew from the sky to make his body damp each morning. Take away his sanity and let him have the mind like an animal's mind for seven years.

ULB:

¹⁵ Leave the stump of its roots in the earth, bound with a band of iron and bronze, in the middle of the tender grass of the field. Let it be wet with the dew from the heavens. Let it live with the animals among the plants on the ground. ¹⁶ Let his mind be changed from man's mind, and let an animal's mind be given to him until seven years pass by.

translationWords:

- [earth, earthly](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [mind](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In verses 1-18, Nebuchadnezzar describes in the first person his vision from God. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **General Information:** - The holy messenger in the vision continues shouting to some people.
- **stump of its roots** - This is the part of the tree that is left above the ground after a tree is cut down.
- **dew** - the moisture on the ground that is found in the mornings
- **Let his mind be changed ... seven years pass by** - Since the tree represents Nebuchadnezzar, the masculine pronouns "his" and "him" in verse 16 refer to the same tree as the neuter pronoun "it" in verse 15. AT: "The man's mind will change from a man's mind to an animal's mind for a period of seven years" (See: [Pronouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 04 General Notes](#)

- Daniel 04 Translation Questions

Daniel 4:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ ‘The holy ones in heaven have issued a decree. They want everyone to know that God Most High rules over all the kingdoms in this world. He is the one who chooses the people to rule these kingdoms. He sometimes places very unimportant people in places of importance.’

¹⁸ Belteshazzar, that is what I, King Nebuchadnezzar, saw in my dream. Now you must tell me what the dream means. No one else can tell me. I asked all the very wise men in my kingdom to tell me what it means, but they were unable to do that. But you can tell me because the spirit of the holy gods is in you.”

ULB:

¹⁷ This decision is by the decree reported by the messenger. It is a decision made by the holy ones so that those who are alive may know that the Most High rules over the kingdoms of people and gives them to anyone he wishes to place over them, even to the most humble men.’ ¹⁸ I, King Nebuchadnezzar, had this dream. Now you, Belteshazzar, tell me the interpretation, because none of the men with wisdom in my kingdom can interpret it for me. But you are able to do so, because the spirit of the holy gods is in you.”

translationWords:

- decree
- messenger
- holy, holiness
- Most High
- ruler, rulers, rule
- kingdom
- humble, humility
- king
- Nebuchadnezzar
- dream
- interpret, interpretation
- wise, wisdom
- spirit, spiritual
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In verses 1-18, Nebuchadnezzar describes in the first person his vision from God. (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

- **It is a decision made by the holy ones** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The holy ones have made this decision” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the holy ones** - This phrase probably refers to angels. AT: “the holy angels” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **those who are alive** - “every living person” or “everyone”
- **gives them** - “gives the kingdoms”
- **Belteshazzar** - This was the name the Babylonians gave to Daniel. See how you translated this name in [1:7](#).
- **you are able to do so** - “you are able to interpret it”
- **the spirit of the holy gods** - Nebuchadnezzar believed that Daniel’s power came from the false gods that Nebuchadnezzar worshiped. These are not the same as “the holy ones” in verse 17. See how you translated this phrase in [4:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 4:19**UDB:**

¹⁹ Then Daniel, who was also named Belteshazzar, did not say anything for some time because he was very worried about the meaning of the dream. Then the king said to him, “Belteshazzar, do not be afraid about the dream or what it means.” Daniel replied to the king, “Sir, I wish that the events that were predicted in your dream would happen to those who hate you, and that the meaning of your dream would happen only to your enemies and not to you.

ULB:

¹⁹ Then Daniel, who was also named Belteshazzar, was greatly upset for a while, and his thoughts alarmed him. The king said, “Belteshazzar, do not let the dream or its interpretation alarm you.” Belteshazzar replied, “My master, may the dream be for those who hate you; may its interpretation be for your enemies.

translationWords:

- Daniel
- king
- dream
- interpret, interpretation
- lord, master, sir
- adversary, enemy

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Verses 19-33 use the third person to describe the punishment of Nebuchadnezzar. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **who was also named Belteshazzar** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “who I also named Belteshazzar” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **was greatly upset for a while, and his thoughts alarmed him** - Daniel’s understanding of the meaning of the vision is what alarmed him. This can be explicitly stated. AT: “did not say anything for some time because he was very worried about the meaning of the dream” (UDB) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **may the dream be for those who hate you; may its interpretation be for your enemies** - Daniel is expressing his wish that the dream was not about Nebuchadnezzar, even though he knew that it really was about the king.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 4:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ In your dream you saw a very strong and tall tree. It seemed to reach up to the sky, and everyone in the world could see it. ²¹ It had beautiful leaves, and it had produced much fruit for all people and creatures to eat. Wild animals rested in the shade of that tree, and birds built nests in its branches. ²² O king, that tree is you! You have become very powerful. Your greatness has grown and reached up to the sky, and you rule people all over the world.

ULB:

²⁰ The tree that you saw—which grew and became strong, and whose top reached up to the heavens, and which could be seen to the ends of the whole earth—²¹ whose leaves were beautiful, and whose fruit was abundant, so that in it was food for all, and under it the animals of the field found shade, and in which the birds of the heavens lived—²² this tree is you, king, you who have grown so strong. Your greatness has grown and reaches to the heavens, and your authority reaches to the ends of the earth.

translationWords:

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthly
- king
- authority

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Verses 19-33 use the third person to describe the punishment of Nebuchadnezzar. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **General Information:** - Many terms in these verses are almost the same as [4:10-12](#). See how you translated those verses.
- **abundant** - “very plentiful”
- **this tree is you, king** - “this tree represents you, king”
- **Your greatness has grown ... your authority reaches** - These two phrases mean similar things. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **Your greatness has grown** - This phrase is using the word “grown” as a way of saying the king’s greatness has increased. AT: “Your greatness has increased” (See: [Personification](#))
- **to the heavens ... to the ends of the earth** - These phrases are exaggerations that everyone everywhere knew how great Nebuchadnezzar was. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 4:23**UDB:**

²³ Then you saw a holy angel come down from heaven; he said, ‘Cut down that tree, and cut off its branches. Strip off all of its leaves, and scatter its fruit. But leave the stump of the tree and its roots in the ground. Fasten a band of iron and bronze around the stump and allow it to stay there with grass around it. Each morning bring dew from the sky to make this man, who is represented by that tree, damp. Cause him to live in the fields with the animals for seven years.’

ULB:

²³ You, king, saw a holy messenger coming down from heaven and saying, ‘Chop down the tree and destroy it, but leave the stump of its roots in the earth, bound with a band of iron and bronze, in the middle of the tender grass of the field. Let it be wet with the dew from the heavens. Let it live with the wild animals in the fields until seven years pass by.’

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Verses 19-33 use the third person to describe the punishment of Nebuchadnezzar. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **General Information:** - This verse is almost the same as [4:13-14](#) and [4:15-16](#). See how you translated those verses.
- **the stump of its roots** - This is the part of the tree that is left above ground after a tree is cut down.
- **in the middle of the tender grass of the field** - “surrounded by the tender grass of the field”
- **dew** - the moisture that settles on the ground in the mornings

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 4:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ This is what your dream means, O king. This is what the Most High God has declared will happen to you. ²⁵ You will be forced to live away from other human beings. You will live in the fields with the wild animals. You will eat grass like an ox, and dew from the sky will make you wet every morning. You will live that way for seven years until you learn that it is the Most High God who rules over the kingdoms of the world. He appoints the ones he chooses to rule over them.

ULB:

²⁴ This is the interpretation, king. It is a decree of the Most High that has reached you, my master the king. ²⁵ You will be driven from among men, and you will live with the wild animals in the fields. You will be made to eat grass like an ox, and you will be wet with the dew from the heavens, and seven years will pass by until you acknowledge that the Most High rules over the kingdoms of people and that he gives them to anyone he wishes.

translationWords:

- interpret, interpretation
- decree
- Most High
- lord, master, sir
- king
- cast out, drive out, throw out
- ox, oxen
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- acknowledge
- ruler, rulers, rule
- kingdom

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Verses 19-33 use the third person to describe the punishment of Nebuchadnezzar. (See: **First, Second or Third Person**)
- **General Information:** - Many terms in these verses are almost the same as 4:15-16. See how you translated those verses.
- **that has reached you** - “that you have heard”
- **You will be driven from among men** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Men will drive you away from them” (See: **Active or Passive**)

- **You will be made to eat grass** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “You will eat grass”
(See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 4:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ But the stump of the tree and its roots were left in the ground. That means that you will rule your kingdom again when you learn that it is God who is over everything and everyone. ²⁷ Your Majesty, please do what I am telling you to do. Stop sinning and do what is right. Turn away from your evil behavior. Act mercifully to those whom other people are mistreating. If you do that, perhaps you will continue to prosper.”

ULB:

²⁶ As it was commanded to leave the stump of the roots of the tree, in this way your kingdom will be returned to you from the time you learn that heaven rules. ²⁷ Therefore, king, let my advice be acceptable to you. Stop sinning and do what is right. Turn away from your iniquities by showing mercy to the oppressed, and it may be that your prosperity will be extended.”

translationWords:

- command, to command, commandment
- kingdom
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- iniquity
- mercy, merciful
- oppress, oppression, oppressor

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Verses 19-33 use the third person to describe the punishment of Nebuchadnezzar. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **heaven rules** - Here “heaven” refers to God who lives in heaven. AT: “God in heaven is the ruler of all” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **let my advice be acceptable to you** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “please accept my advice” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Turn away from your iniquities** - Here rejecting iniquity is spoken of as turning away from it. AT: “Reject your iniquities” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the oppressed** - This nominal adjective refers to people who are oppressed. AT: “people who are oppressed” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **it may be that your prosperity will be extended** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God may extend your prosperity” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 4:28-30**UDB:**

28-29 All these things happened to King Nebuchadnezzar: Twelve months later, he was walking around on the roof of his palace in Babylon,³⁰ and he looked out over the city and said to those around him, “I have built this great city of Babylon to be the place where I rule! I have built it with my own power to show people my honor and my greatness.”

ULB:

28-29 All these things happened to King Nebuchadnezzar. Twelve months later he was walking on the roof of the royal palace in Babylon,³⁰ and he said, “Is this not the great Babylon, which I have built for my royal residence, for the glory of my majesty?”

translationWords:

- king
- Nebuchadnezzar
- biblical time: month
- royal
- palace
- Babylon, Babylonian
- glory, glorious
- majesty

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Verses 19-33 use the third person to describe the punishment of Nebuchadnezzar. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **All these things ... in Babylon** - The information in [4:28-29](#) has been rearranged so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))
- **Twelve months** - “12 months” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Is this not the great Babylon ... for the glory of my majesty?** - Nebuchadnezzar asks this question to emphasize his own glory. This can be translated as a statement. AT: “This is the great Babylon ... for the glory of my majesty!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **for the glory of my majesty** - “to show people my honor and my greatness” (UDB)

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 4:31-32**UDB:**

³¹ The king had just finished speaking when a voice came from heaven and said, "King Nebuchadnezzar, this is what must happen: you are no longer the ruler of this kingdom! ³² You will live away from human society. You will live in the fields with wild animals, and you will eat grass as an ox does. You will live that way for seven years until you learn that it is I, the Most High, who rules over the kingdoms of this world, and I appoint whomever I wish to rule over them."

ULB:

³¹ While the words were still on the lips of the king, a voice came from heaven: "King Nebuchadnezzar, it is announced to you that this kingdom has been taken away from you. ³² You will be driven away from people, and your home will be with the wild animals in the fields. You will be made to eat grass like an ox. Seven years will pass until you acknowledge that the Most High rules over the kingdoms of people and he gives them to anyone he wishes."

translationWords:

- king
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Nebuchadnezzar
- decree
- kingdom
- ox, oxen
- acknowledge
- Most High
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Verses 19-33 use the third person to describe the punishment of Nebuchadnezzar. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **While the words were still on the lips of the king** - This idiom means the king was still in the act of speaking. AT: "While the king was still speaking" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **a voice came from heaven** - "he heard a voice from heaven"
- **King Nebuchadnezzar ... has been taken away from you** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "King Nebuchadnezzar, a decree went out against you that this kingdom no longer belongs to you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **You will be driven away from people** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “People will chase you away from them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **anyone he wishes** - “whoever he chooses”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 4:33

UDB:

³³ At that very moment everything that had been said about Nebuchadnezzar came true. He was driven away from other human beings. He ate grass like an ox, and dew from the sky made me wet every morning. My hair grew as long the feathers of an eagle, and my fingernails became like the claws of a bird.

ULB:

³³ This decree against Nebuchadnezzar was carried out immediately. He was driven away from people. He ate grass like an ox, and his body was wet with the dew from the heavens. His hair grew as long as eagles' feathers, and his nails became like birds' claws.

translationWords:

- [decree](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [ox, oxen](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [eagle](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Verses 19-33 use the third person to describe the punishment of Nebuchadnezzar. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **This decree against Nebuchadnezzar was carried out immediately** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "This decree against Nebuchadnezzar happened immediately" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **He was driven away from people** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "People chased him away from them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **his nails became like birds' claws** - "his fingernails looked like birds' claws"

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 04 General Notes](#)

- Daniel 04 Translation Questions

Daniel 4:34**UDB:**

³⁴ After those seven years ended, I, Nebuchadnezzar, looked up toward heaven and acknowledged that what God said was true. Then I could think correctly again, and my sanity was restored. I praised and worshiped the Most High, and I honored him, the one who lives forever.

He rules forever;
his ruling power is an everlasting authority.

ULB:

³⁴ At the end of the days I, Nebuchadnezzar, raised my eyes toward heaven, and my sanity was given back to me.

"I praised the Most High,
and I honored and glorified the one who lives forever.
For his reign is an everlasting reign,
and his kingdom endures from all generations to all generations.

translationWords:

- Nebuchadnezzar
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- praise
- Most High
- honor, to honor
- glorify
- forever
- reign
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- kingdom
- generation

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In verses 34-37 Nebuchadnezzar speaks in the first person to describe his response to God. (See: **First, Second or Third Person**)
- **At the end of the days** - This refers back to the seven years in **4:32**.

- **my sanity was given back to me** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “my sanity came back to me” or “I became sane again” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **I praised ... and I honored** - The two phrases refer to the same action. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **For his reign is an everlasting reign ... his kingdom endures from all generations to all generations** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are used to emphasize how God’s reign never ends. AT: “He rules forever and his kingdom will never end” (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 4:35**UDB:**

³⁵ He regards all the people in the world as insignificant.

He has the power to do whatever he wants to do.

He does whatever he wants with the angel armies in heaven and with us who live on the earth.

So no one can correct him;

no one can challenge him;

no one can say to him, “Why are you doing these things?”

ULB:

³⁵ All the earth’s inhabitants are considered by him to be as nothing; he does among the army of heaven and the inhabitants of the earth whatever suits his will.

No one can stop him or challenge him. No one can say to him, “Why have you done this?”

translationWords:

- earth, earthly
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In verses 34-37 Nebuchadnezzar speaks in the first person to describe his response to God. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **All the earth’s inhabitants are considered by him to be as nothing** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “He considers all the earth’s inhabitants as nothing” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **All the earth’s inhabitants** - “All the people on the earth”
- **the army of heaven** - “the angel armies in heaven” (UDB)
- **whatever suits his will** - “whatever satisfies his purpose” or “anything he wants to do”
- **No one can stop him** - It may be helpful to add additional detail. AT: “No one can stop him from doing what he decides to do” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

- **No one can say to him, ‘Why have you done this?’** - This can be stated as an indirect quotation. AT: “No one can question what he does” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 4:36-37**UDB:**

³⁶ When I was able to think correctly again, I was honored again; and for the glory of my kingdom, my splendor and the shining brightness of my reign were brought back to my kingdom again. My advisors returned to me, and I became greater and more powerful than I was before. ³⁷ Now I, Nebuchadnezzar, praise and honor God, the king who rules in heaven. All of his actions are just and right. And he is able to make the proud humble.

ULB:

³⁶ At the same time that my sanity returned to me, my majesty and splendor returned to me for the glory of my kingdom. My counselors and my noblemen sought my favor. I was brought back to my throne, and even more greatness was given to me. ³⁷ Now I, Nebuchadnezzar, praise, extol, and honor the King of heaven, for all his deeds are right, and his ways are just. He can humble those who walk in their own pride.

translationWords:

- majesty
- splendor
- glory, glorious
- kingdom
- counsel, counselor, advice, advisor
- noble, nobleman
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- throne
- Nebuchadnezzar
- praise
- honor, to honor
- king
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- works, deeds, work, acts
- just, justice, justly
- humble, humility
- proud, pride, prideful

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In verses 34-37 Nebuchadnezzar speaks in the first person to describe his response to God. (See: **First, Second or Third Person**)

- **my sanity returned to me** - Here his sanity is spoken of as if it was able to return by its own power. AT: “I became sane again” (See: [Personification](#))
- **my majesty and splendor returned to me** - Here his majesty and splendor are spoken of as if they were able to return by their own power. AT: “I regained my majesty and my splendor again” (See: [Personification](#))
- **majesty and splendor** - These words mean basically the same thing and emphasize the greatness of his glory. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **my noblemen sought my favor** - “my noblemen requested my help again”
- **I was brought ... greatness was given to me.** - Here “throne” refers to his authority to rule. This can be stated in active form. AT: “I returned to rule my kingdom again, and I received even more greatness” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **praise, extol, and honor** - All three of these words have basically the same meaning and emphasize how greatly he praised God. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **who walk in their own pride** - This phrase uses “walk” to refer to the person acts proud. AT: “who are proud” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 04 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 04 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 5 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The writing on the wall

God told the new king that he had failed and God was replacing him; showing that God is the real ruler over everything, even kingdoms that do not worship him.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Mene, Mene, Tekel, Upharsin

These are names in Aramaic. Daniel does not “translate” these names into Hebrew but chooses to “transliterate” or transfer it into Hebrew. The translators of the ULB and UDB have not translated these names either. The translator should try to form the sounds of this phrase without translating its meaning.

Links:

- [Daniel 05:01 Notes](#)

Daniel 5:1-2

UDB:

¹ Several years later, Belshazzar became the king of Babylon. One day he invited one thousand of the most important people to a big feast, and he drank wine in front of them all. ² While he was drinking, he commanded that his servants bring him the gold and silver cups that his father Nebuchadnezzar had taken from the temple in Jerusalem. He did this so that he and his officials, his wives, and his concubines could drink from them.

ULB:

5 ¹ Belshazzar the king made a great feast for a thousand of his noblemen, and he drank wine in front of all one thousand of them. ² While Belshazzar tasted the wine, he gave orders to bring the containers made of gold or silver that Nebuchadnezzar his father had taken out of the temple in Jerusalem, from which he, his noblemen, and his wives and concubines could drink.

translationWords:

- king
- feast
- noble, nobleman
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- gold
- silver
- Nebuchadnezzar
- temple
- Jerusalem
- concubine

translationNotes:

- **Belshazzar** - This is the son of Nebuchadnezzar who became king after his father. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **for a thousand** - “for 1,000” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **he drank wine in front of** - “he drank wine in the presence of”
- **the containers made of gold or silver** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the gold or silver containers that the Israelites had made” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **containers** - These were cups and other items that were small enough for a person to hold and to drink from them.
- **Nebuchadnezzar his father had taken** - This phrase is using the name Nebuchadnezzar to refer to the king’s army. AT: “the army of Nebuchadnezzar his father had taken” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 05 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 5:3-4**UDB:**

³ So his servants brought in all those gold cups that had been taken from the temple in Jerusalem. Then the king and his officials and his wives and his concubines drank wine from those cups. ⁴ They drank wine and praised their idols—these idols that were made of gold and silver, bronze, iron, wood, and of stone.

ULB:

³ The servants brought the gold containers that had been taken out of the temple, the house of God, in Jerusalem. The king, his noblemen, and his wives and concubines drank from them. ⁴ They drank the wine and praised their idols made of gold and silver, bronze, iron, wood, and stone.

translationWords:

- servant, slave, slavery
- gold
- temple
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- Jerusalem
- king
- noble, nobleman
- concubine
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- praise
- idol, idolatrous
- silver
- bronze

translationNotes:

- **the gold containers that had been taken out of the temple** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "the gold containers that the army of Nebuchadnezzar had taken out of the temple" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **out of the temple, the house of God** - "out of God's temple." The phrase "the house of God" tells us something more about the temple.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 05 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 5:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Suddenly they saw across from the lampstand a man's hand and fingers. The hand was writing on the plaster wall in the palace. The king saw the hand as it was writing. ⁶ He became very frightened, and his face became pale. His knees started shaking and his legs became very weak and could not support him.

ULB:

⁵ At that moment the fingers of a human hand appeared in front of the lampstand and wrote on the plaster wall in the king's palace. The king could see part of the hand as it wrote. ⁶ Then the king's face changed and his thoughts frightened him; his limbs could not support him, and his knees were knocking together.

translationWords:

- [lampstand](#)
- [king](#)
- [palace](#)

translationNotes:

- **At that moment** - "As soon as they did that" or "Suddenly" (UDB)
- **plaster** - cement or mud that is spread on walls or ceilings to give them a smooth hard surface when it dries
- **the king's face changed** - "his face became pale" (UDB). This was caused by his fear.
- **his limbs** - "his legs"
- **his knees were knocking together** - This was the result of his extreme fear.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 05 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 5:7**UDB:**

⁷ Then he shouted to his servants to bring those who claimed to speak with the dead, the wise men, and the astrologers in Babylon. He said, “I will greatly honor anyone of you who can read this writing and tell me what it means. I will give that person a purple robe like I wear because I am the king and I will put a gold chain around his neck. I will make him the third most powerful ruler in my kingdom.”

ULB:

⁷ The king shouted a command to bring in those who claimed to speak with the dead, wise men, and astrologers. The king said to those known for their wisdom in Babylon, “Whoever explains this writing and its meaning will be clothed with purple and will have a gold chain around his neck. He will have the authority of the third highest ruler in the kingdom.”

translationWords:

- king
- death, die, dead
- wise, wisdom
- learned men, astrologers
- Babylon, Babylonian
- purple
- gold
- authority
- kingdom

translationNotes:

- **those known for their wisdom in Babylon** - This refers back to those who claimed to speak with the dead, the wise men, and the astrologers.
- **Whoever explains this writing and its meaning will be clothed with purple and will have a gold chain around his neck** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will give purple clothes and a gold neck chain to whoever explains this writing and its meaning” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **clothed with purple** - Purple cloth was rare and reserved for royal officials. AT: “dressed in royal clothing” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the third highest ruler** - “the number three ruler” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 05 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 5:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ But when all those wise men came in, none of them could read the writing or tell him what it meant. ⁹ So King Belshazzar became more afraid. His face was changed and he looked different. None of his officials knew how they could help him.

ULB:

⁸ Then all the king's men who were known for their wisdom came in, but they could not read the writing or explain its meaning to the king. ⁹ Then King Belshazzar was greatly alarmed and the look on his face changed. His noblemen were perplexed.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [noble, nobleman](#)

translationNotes:

- **Belshazzar** - This is the son of Nebuchadnezzar who became king after his father. See how you wrote this name in [5:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the look on his face changed** - "his face became even more pale." The face of the king grew even more pale than in [5:6](#).
- **perplexed** - "confused"

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 05 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 5:10

UDB:

¹⁰ The queen came to the place where they were eating. She heard what the king had said and that his nobles did not know how to help him. She said, "O king, may you live forever! Do not be upset about this or let this change the way you look.

ULB:

¹⁰ Now the queen came into the banquet house because of what the king and his nobles had said. The queen said, "King, live forever! Do not let your thoughts trouble you. Do not let the look on your face change.

translationWords:

- [queen](#)
- [banquet](#)
- [king](#)
- [noble, nobleman](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [forever](#)
- [trouble, troubles, troubled](#)

translationNotes:

- **the queen** - Some modern versions understand this to be a reference to the queen mother, that is, to the king's mother. The queen mother received much honor in ancient Babylon.
- **King, live forever!** - This was a normal way to greet the king.
- **Do not let the look on your face change** - "There is no need for your face to look so pale"

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 05 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 5:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ There is a man in your kingdom who has the spirit of the holy gods in him. When Nebuchadnezzar was ruling, he found that this man understood many things and was wise, just like the gods. Nebuchadnezzar appointed him to be in charge of the magicians, of those who speak with the dead, of the wise men, and of the astrologers. ¹² His name is Daniel, but the king gave him the name Belteshazzar. He is a person who can be trusted. He is very intelligent and understands many hidden things. He is able to tell the meaning of dreams, to explain riddles, and to solve problems that few others can solve. Call for him to come here and he will tell you what this writing means.”

ULB:

¹¹ There is a man in your kingdom who has the spirit of the holy gods. In the days of your father, light and understanding and wisdom like the wisdom of the gods was found in him. King Nebuchadnezzar, your father the king, made him chief of the magicians, as well as chief of those who speak with the dead, of the wise men, and of the astrologers. ¹² An excellent spirit, knowledge, understanding, interpreting of dreams, explaining riddles and solving problems—these qualities were found in this man Daniel, whom the king named Belteshazzar. Now call for Daniel and he will tell you the meaning of what has been written.”

translationWords:

- kingdom
- spirit, spiritual
- holy, holiness
- light
- wise, wisdom
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- king
- Nebuchadnezzar
- chief
- death, die, dead
- magic, magician
- learned men, astrologers
- know, knowledge, make known
- interpret, interpretation
- dream

translationNotes:

- **the spirit of the holy gods** - The queen believed that Daniel's power came from the false gods that Nebuchadnezzar worshiped. See how you translated this phrase in [4:8](#).
- **In the days of your father** - "When your father was ruling"
- **light and understanding and wisdom like the wisdom of the gods was found in him** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "he had light and understanding and wisdom like the wisdom of the gods" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **King Nebuchadnezzar, your father the king** - "Your father, King Nebuchadnezzar"
- **these qualities were found in this man Daniel, whom the king named Belteshazzar** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "this same Daniel, whom the king named Belteshazzar, had all of these qualities" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **what has been written** - "what has been written on the wall." This can be stated in active form. AT: "what the hand wrote on the wall" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 05 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 5:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ So they went and brought Daniel in. The king asked him, "You are the famous Daniel, are you not?—one of those that my father brought here from Judah. ¹⁴ I have heard that the spirit of the gods is in you and that you understand many things and have excellent wisdom.

ULB:

¹³ Then Daniel was brought before the king. The king said to him, "You are that Daniel, one of the people of the exiles of Judah, whom my father the king brought out of Judah. ¹⁴ I have heard about you, that the spirit of the gods is in you, and that light and understanding and excellent wisdom are found in you.

translationWords:

- Daniel
- king
- exile, the Exile
- Judah
- spirit, spiritual
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- light
- wise, wisdom

translationNotes:

- **Then Daniel was brought before the king** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "Then they brought Daniel before the king" or "Then the soldiers brought Daniel before the king" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **whom my father the king brought out of Judah** - In this phrase "father" is being used to represent all of the soldiers. AT: "whom my father's soldiers brought out of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the spirit of the gods** - Belshazzar believed that Daniel's power came from the false gods that Belshazzar worshiped. See how you translated a similar phrase in [4:8](#).
- **light and understanding and excellent wisdom are found in you** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "you have light and understanding and excellent wisdom" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 05 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 5:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ There were men who are known for their wisdom and others who speak with the dead, and they tried to read the writing on this wall and to tell me what it means, but they could not do it. ¹⁶ Someone told me that you can explain what dreams mean and that you can make things understandable that others cannot know. If you can read these words and tell me what they mean, I will give you a purple robe like I wear because I am the king, and I will put a gold chain around your neck, and I will make you the third most powerful ruler in the kingdom.”

ULB:

¹⁵ Now the men known for wisdom and those who claim to speak with the dead have been brought in before me to read this writing and make known to me its interpretation, but they could not make known the interpretation of it. ¹⁶ I have heard that you can give interpretations and solve problems. Now if you can read the writing and tell me its meaning, you will be clothed with purple and have a gold chain placed around your neck, and you will have the authority of the third highest ruler in the kingdom.”

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- death, die, dead
- interpret, interpretation
- purple
- gold
- authority
- ruler, rulers, rule
- kingdom

translationNotes:

- **Now the men known ... have been brought in before me** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Now the men known ... have come in before me” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **make known to me** - “tell me”
- **you will be clothed with purple and have a gold chain placed around your neck** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will give you purple clothes and a gold neck chain” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **clothed with purple** - Purple cloth was rare and reserved for royal officials. AT: “dressed in royal clothing” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **the third highest ruler** - “the number three ruler” (See: **Ordinal Numbers**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 05 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 5:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ Daniel replied and said to the king, "I do not want your gifts. Keep them for yourself and give the rewards to some other person. I will read what is written on the wall for you, but not because you give me any reward.

¹⁸ Your Majesty, the Most High God caused Nebuchadnezzar, the man who was king before you, to become a great ruler. He was greatly praised and honored. ¹⁹ Because God made him very great, everyone—every nation, no matter what language they spoke—was afraid of him, and they trembled at what he could do. He put to death those whom he decreed should die, and he kept alive those whom he decreed should live. He honored those whom he chose to honor, and he brought disgrace to those whom he wanted to humble.

ULB:

¹⁷ Then Daniel answered before the king, "Let your gifts be for yourself, and give your rewards to another person. Nevertheless, I will read the writing to you, king, and will tell you the meaning. ¹⁸ As for you, king, the Most High God gave Nebuchadnezzar your father the kingdom, greatness, honor, and majesty. ¹⁹ Because of the greatness God gave him, all peoples, nations, and languages trembled and feared him. He put to death those he wanted to die, and he kept alive those he wished to live. He raised up those he wanted, and he humbled those he wished.

translationWords:

- Daniel
- king
- Most High
- Nebuchadnezzar
- kingdom
- honor, to honor
- majesty
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- nation
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- humble, humility

translationNotes:

- **Let your gifts be for yourself, and** - "I do not want your gifts, so"

- **all peoples, nations, and languages** - This phrase uses the word “all” as a generalization that represents a large number. AT: “a great number of people, of different nations and languages,” (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **peoples, nations, and languages** - Here “nations” and “languages” represent people from different nations who speak different languages. See how you translated this in [3:4](#). AT: “people from different nations and who speak different languages” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **trembled and feared him** - These words mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of the fear. AT: “were very afraid of him” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **He put to death those he wanted to die** - This phrase does not mean King Nebuchadnezzar put people to death himself, but rather those he commanded. AT: “Nebuchadnezzar commanded his soldiers to kill those he wanted to die” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **He raised up those he wanted** - “He raised up those he wanted to raise up”
- **wanted ... wished** - These words here mean the same thing.
- **he humbled those he wished** - “he humbled those he wished to humble”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 05 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 5:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ But when he became very proud and stubborn, he was unable to rule any longer. ²¹ He had to go away from other human beings because he lost his mind. God caused him to have a mind like animals have. He lived among the wild donkeys. He ate grass like an ox, and dew from the sky made his body wet every morning. He was like that until he learned that the Most High God is the only one who rules the kingdoms of this world and that he appoints whomever he chooses to rule those kingdoms.

ULB:

²⁰ But when his heart was arrogant and his spirit was hardened so that he acted presumptuously, he was brought down from his kingly throne, and they took away his majesty. ²¹ He was driven away from humanity, he had the mind of an animal, and he lived with the wild donkeys. He ate grass like an ox. His body was wet with the dew from the heavens until he learned that the Most High God rules over the kingdoms of people and that he sets over them anyone he wishes.

translationWords:

- heart
- spirit, spiritual
- king
- throne
- majesty
- donkey, mule
- ox, oxen
- Most High
- ruler, rulers, rule
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- kingdom

translationNotes:

- **his heart was arrogant** - Here “heart” refers to the king himself. AT: “the king was arrogant” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **his spirit was hardened** - Here “spirit” refers to the king himself. His stubbornness is spoken of as if he were hardened. AT: “the king became stubborn” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **presumptuously** - rudely and overly confident
- **he was brought down from his kingly throne** - Here “throne” refers to his authority to rule. This can be stated in active form. AT: “the people took away his kingdom” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

- **He was driven away from humanity** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The people chased him away from them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **he had the mind of an animal** - Here “mind” represents his thoughts. AT: “he thought as an animal thinks” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **dew** - the moisture on the ground that is found in the mornings
- **anyone he wishes** - “whomever he chooses”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 05 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 5:22-24**UDB:**

²² Now, Belshazzar, you have become king in your father's place. You knew all these things, but you have not made yourself humble. ²³ You have put yourself above the Lord who rules in heaven. You called for the cups from the house of God in Jerusalem so that you could use them to drink wine. You and your officials and your wives and your concubines have been drinking wine from these cups and toasting your own gods—gods of gold and silver, bronze, iron, wood, and stone. Those gods cannot see, they cannot hear, and they do not know anything! But you have not honored God, who gives you breath and who controls everything that happens to you. ²⁴ So God sent this hand to write a message for you on the wall.

ULB:

²² You his son, Belshazzar, have not humbled your heart, even though you knew all this. ²³ You have lifted yourself up against the Lord of heaven. From his house they brought you the containers that you, your nobles, your wives and your concubines drank wine from, and you praised the idols made of silver and gold, bronze, iron, wood, and stone—idols that do not see, hear, or know anything. You have not honored the God who holds your breath in his hand and who knows all your ways. ²⁴ Then God sent out a hand from his presence and this writing was done.

translationWords:

- heart
- Lord
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- noble, nobleman
- concubine
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- idol, idolatrous
- silver
- gold
- honor, to honor
- breathe, breath
- hand, right hand, to hand over

translationNotes:

- **Belshazzar** - This is the son of Nebuchadnezzar who became king after his father. See how you wrote this name in 5:1. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

- **have not humbled your heart** - Here “heart” refers to Belshazzar himself. AT: “have not humbled yourself” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **You have lifted yourself up against the Lord** - To rebel against God is spoken of as raising oneself up against him. AT: “You have rebelled against the Lord” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **From his house** - What and where “his house” is can be stated clearly. AT: “From his temple in Jerusalem” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **God who holds your breath in his hand** - Here “breath” refers to life and “hand” refers to power or control. AT: “God who gives you breath” or “God who has control over your entire life” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **all your ways** - “everything you do”
- **this writing was done** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “it wrote this message” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 05 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 5:25-28**UDB:**

²⁵ This is the message that it wrote: Mene, Mene, Tekel, and Pharsin.

²⁶ This is what those words mean:

‘Mene’ means ‘numbered.’ That means that God has been counting the days that you will rule, and he has decided that you will not rule anymore.

²⁷ ‘Mene’ means ‘weighed.’ God has weighed you on a scale, and you do not weigh what you should.

²⁸ ‘Peres’ means ‘divided.’ God has divided your kingdom. It will be ruled by people from Media and by people from Persia.”

ULB:

²⁵ This is the writing that was done: ‘Mene, Mene, Tekel, and Pharsin.’ ²⁶ This is its meaning: ‘Mene,’ ‘God has numbered your kingdom and brought it to an end.’ ²⁷ ‘Tekel,’ ‘you are weighed in the scales and are found lacking.’ ²⁸ ‘Peres,’ ‘your kingdom is divided and is given to the Medes and Persians.’”

translationWords:

- God
- kingdom
- Medes, Media
- Persia, Persians

translationNotes:

- **This is the writing that was done** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “This is the message that the hand wrote” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **Mene, Mene, Tekel, and Pharsin** - These are the Aramaic words that were written on the wall. Spell these words with the sounds that fit your language. (See: **Copy or Borrow Words**)
- **‘Mene,’ ‘God has numbered** - “‘Mene’ means ‘God has numbered”
- **‘Tekel,’ ‘you are weighed** - “‘Tekel’ means ‘you are weighed”
- **‘Peres,’ ‘your kingdom** - “‘Peres’ means ‘your kingdom.”
- **Peres** - This is the singular form of “Pharsin” in 5:25.
- **you are weighed in the scales and are found lacking** - Judging the worthiness of the king to rule is spoken of as weighing him. This means that the king is not worthy to rule. This can be stated in active form. AT: “God has examined your worthiness to rule, and he has found that you are not worthy” (See: **Metaphor** and **Active or Passive**)

- **your kingdom is divided and is given to the Medes and Persians** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God has divided your kingdom and given it to the Medes and Persians” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 05 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 5:29-31**UDB:**

²⁹ Then Belshazzar did what he had promised. He put on Daniel a purple robe like the one he himself wore. He put a gold chain around his neck, and he proclaimed that Daniel would be the third most powerful ruler in the kingdom.

³⁰ But that same night soldiers from Media entered the city and killed Belshazzar, king of Babylonia.

³¹ Darius, king of Media, became the king of Babylonia when he was sixty-two years old.

ULB:

²⁹ Then Belshazzar gave a command, and they clothed Daniel with purple. A chain of gold was put around his neck, and the king made a proclamation about him that he would have the authority of the third highest ruler in the kingdom. ³⁰ That night Belshazzar, the Babylonian king, was killed, ³¹ and Darius the Mede received the kingdom when he was about sixty-two years old.

translationWords:

- command, to command, commandment
- Daniel
- purple
- gold
- king
- proclaim, proclamation
- authority
- ruler, rulers, rule
- kingdom
- Babylon, Babylonian
- Darius
- Medes, Media

translationNotes:

- **Belshazzar** - This is the son of Nebuchadnezzar who became king after his father. See how you wrote this name in 5:1. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **A chain of gold was put around his neck** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “They put a chain of gold around his neck” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the third highest ruler** - “the number three ruler” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **received the kingdom** - “became the ruler of the kingdom”
- **when he was about sixty-two years old** - “when he was about 62 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 05 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 05 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart extended quotations, prayers or songs. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 6:25-28, which is the poetic part of the quotation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Daniel and the lions

Daniel was thrown into the lion's den for praying to Yahweh. But Yahweh protected him and the lions did not hurt him at all.

Links:

- [**Daniel 06:01 Notes**](#)

Daniel 6:1-3

UDB:

¹ King Darius decided to divide his kingdom into 120 provinces. He appointed a governor to rule each province. ² The king also appointed three administrators, one of whom was Daniel. These chief administrators were to supervise the provincial governors, to give oversight so that the king's orders were followed, and to ensure that the king would not have anything stolen from his treasuries. ³ Daniel was a very capable leader and an exceptional person, and he distinguished himself among the chief administrators. The king made plans to appoint Daniel over his entire kingdom.

ULB:

6 ¹ It pleased Darius to appoint over the kingdom 120 provincial governors who would rule over all the kingdom. ² Over them there were three chief administrators, and Daniel was one of them. These chief administrators were appointed so that they might supervise the provincial governors, so that the king should suffer no loss. ³ Daniel was distinguished above the other chief administrators and the provincial governors because he had an extraordinary spirit. The king was planning to put him over the whole kingdom.

translationWords:

- Darius
- appoint, appointed
- kingdom
- province, provincial
- governor, govern, proconsul, government
- ruler, rulers, rule
- administration, administrator
- Daniel
- king
- spirit, spiritual

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - The events in this chapter take place after the Persians conquered the Babylonians and Darius the Mede began to rule in Babylon.
- **It pleased Darius** - "King Darius decided"
- **120 provincial governors** - "one hundred and twenty provincial governors" (See: **Numbers**)
- **Over them** - The word "them" refers to the 120 provincial governors.
- **so that the king should suffer no loss** - "so that nothing should be stolen from the king" or "so that no one would steal anything from the king"

- **was distinguished above** - “excelled above” or “was more capable than”
- **he had an extraordinary spirit** - Here “spirit” refers to Daniel. It means he had was unusually capable. AT: “he was and exceptional person” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **extraordinary** - “impressive” or “excellent”
- **to put him over** - “to give him authority over” or “to put him in charge of”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 06 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 6:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ Then the other administrators and the governors became jealous. So they began to search to find some way that they could criticize the work Daniel did when he was working for the king. But he always did his work faithfully and honestly. They could not find anything to criticize. He was honest and worked hard. ⁵ They began their plot against Daniel, “The only way we can find a reason to criticize Daniel would be to use his obedience to the law of his God against him.”

ULB:

⁴ Then the other chief administrators and the provincial governors looked for mistakes in the work Daniel did for the kingdom, but they could find no corruption or failure in his duty because he was faithful. No mistakes or negligence was found in him. ⁵ Then these men said, “We cannot find any reason to complain against this Daniel unless we find something against him regarding the law of his God.”

translationWords:

- chief
- administration, administrator
- province, provincial
- governor, govern, proconsul, government
- Daniel
- kingdom
- corrupt, corruption
- faithful, faithfulness
- God

translationNotes:

- **Then the other chief administrators and the provincial governors ... for the kingdom** - The other administrators were jealous of Daniel. This can be made explicit. AT: “Then the other chief administrators and the provincial governors became jealous. So they looked for mistakes in the work Daniel did for the kingdom” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **No mistakes or negligence was found in him** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “They could find no mistakes or negligence in his work.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **negligence** - overly looking your responsibilities
- **to complain against this Daniel** - “to complain about Daniel”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 06 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 6:6-7

UDB:

⁶ So the administrators and governors put their plan in place by going as a group to the king and saying, "Your Majesty, may you live forever!" ⁷ All of the chief administrators and regional governors and provincial governors and advisors and other governors have all agreed that you should make a law that everyone must obey. We want you to command that for the next thirty days people may pray only to you and to no god or person other than you. If anyone prays to anyone else, he must be thrown into a room filled with lions.

ULB:

⁶ Then these administrators and governors brought a plan before the king. They said to him, "King Darius, may you live forever!" ⁷ All the chief administrators of the kingdom, the regional governors, and the provincial governors, the advisors, and the governors have consulted together and decided that you, the king, should issue a decree and should enforce it, so that whoever makes a petition to any god or man for thirty days, except to you, king, that person must be thrown into the den of lions.

translationWords:

- [Darius](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [forever](#)
- [decree](#)
- [lion](#)

translationNotes:

- **brought a plan before the king** - "presented a plan to the king"
- **may you live forever!** - This was a normal way to greet a king.
- **for thirty days** - "for 30 days" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **whoever makes a petition** - "whoever makes a request"
- **that person must be thrown into the den of lions** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "your soldiers must throw that person into the den of lions" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **den of lions** - This may refer to a room or pit where lions were kept.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 06 General Notes](#)

- Daniel 06 Translation Questions

Daniel 6:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Because laws made in the lands of Media and Persia cannot be changed, we want you, the king, to issue the law and sign your name on the document.” ⁹ So King Darius issued the law and signed the document.

ULB:

⁸ Now, King, issue a decree and sign the document so that it may not be changed, as directed by the laws of the Medes and Persians, so it cannot be repealed.” ⁹ So king Darius signed the document making the decree into a law.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [decree](#)
- [law, principle](#)
- [Medes, Media](#)
- [Persia, Persians](#)
- [Darius](#)

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - In verse 8, the administrators continue to speak to the king.
- **as directed by the laws** - “according to the laws”
- **cannot be repealed** - “cannot be canceled”
- **making the decree into a law** - “making the order into a law”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 06 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 6:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ When Daniel found out that the king had written and signed that law, he went home, knelt in his upstairs room, and prayed. The room had a window that looked toward Jerusalem and the windows were open. Anyone could see that he was praying. This is what he did every day, three times a day. ¹¹ The officials followed their plot against Daniel, and they found him praying and asking God for help.

ULB:

¹⁰ When Daniel learned that the document had been signed into law, he went into his house (now his windows were open in his upper room toward Jerusalem), and he got down on his knees, as he did three times a day, and prayed and gave thanks before his God, as he had done before. ¹¹ Then these men who had formed the plot together saw Daniel make requests and seek help from God.

translationWords:

- law, principle
- Jerusalem
- pray, prayer
- God

translationNotes:

- **When Daniel learned that the document had been signed into law** - It is important to the story to state clearly that Daniel knew about the new law before he prayed to God.
- **now his windows were open in his upper room toward Jerusalem** - This is background information that explains how Daniel's enemies knew he was praying to God. (See: [Background Information](#))
- **gave thanks before his God** - "gave thanks to his God"
- **plot** - a plan with evil intent

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 06 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 6:12

UDB:

¹² So they returned to the king and said to him, “Is it true that you wrote a law stating that for the next thirty days people may pray only to you, and that if anyone prays to anyone else, either to a human or to a god, he will be thrown into a pit of lions?”

The king replied, “Yes, that is the law that I wrote. It is a law in the lands of Media and Persia which cannot be changed.”

ULB:

¹² Then they approached the king and spoke with him about his decree: “Did you not make a decree that everyone who makes a petition to any god or human being during the next thirty days, except to you, king, must be throw into the den of lions?” The king answered, “The matter is settled, as directed by the law of the Medes and Persians; it cannot be repealed.”

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [decree](#)
- [lion](#)
- [Medes, Media](#)
- [Persia, Persians](#)

translationNotes:

- **Did you not make a decree ... lions?** - They asked this question to make the king confirm that he had made the decree.
- **who makes a petition** - “who makes a request”
- **den of lions** - This may refer to a room or pit where lions were kept. See how you translated this in [6:7](#).
- **as directed by the law** - “according to the law”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 06 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 6:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ Then they said to the king, “That man Daniel, one of the men who was brought from Judah, is not paying any attention to you or the law that you signed. He prays to his god three times each day!” ¹⁴ When the king heard that, he was very upset about it. He tried to find a way to save Daniel. He worked hard for the rest of that day until the sun set, trying to find a way to save Daniel.

ULB:

¹³ Then they replied to the king, “That person Daniel, who is one of the people of the exile from Judah, pays no attention to you, king, or to the decree that you have signed. He prays to his God three times a day.” ¹⁴ When the king heard this, he was terribly distressed, and he applied his mind to rescue Daniel from this ruling. He labored until sunset to try to save Daniel.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [Daniel](#)
- [exile, the Exile](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [decree](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)

translationNotes:

- **That person Daniel** - This is not a respectful way of referring to Daniel. They intentionally used this phrase to avoid giving Daniel the respect he was due as a chief administrator.
- **who is one of the people of the exile from Judah** - “who is an immigrant from Judah”
- **pays no attention to you** - This idiom means he ignores the king. AT: “does not obey you” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **he applied his mind** - Here “mind” refers to his thinking. AT: “he thought very hard about how” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **He labored** - This refers to mental labor, rather than to physical labor.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 06 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 6:15**UDB:**

¹⁵ In the evening, many of those who formed the plot against Daniel spoke to the king, “You know, O king, that the law of the Medes and Persians is that no change can be made to the king’s commands, and no one can change it.”

ULB:

¹⁵ Then these men who had formed the plot gathered together with the king and said to him, “Know, king, that it is a law of the Medes and Persians, that no decree or statute that the king issues can be changed.”

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [law, principle](#)
- [Medes, Media](#)
- [Persia, Persians](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)

translationNotes:

- **no decree ... can be changed** - An additional sentence may be added here to aid in understanding. AT: “no decree ... can be changed. They must throw Daniel into the pit of lions” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 06 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 6:16**UDB:**

¹⁶ Hearing this, the king gave the order and his servants brought Daniel and threw him into a pit where the lions were. Before they threw him in, the king said to Daniel, “I hope your God, whom you worship all the time, will rescue you!”

ULB:

¹⁶ Then the king gave an order, and they brought in Daniel, and they threw him into the lions’ den. The king said to Daniel, “May your God, whom you serve continually, rescue you.”

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [serve, service](#)

translationNotes:

- **they brought in Daniel** - “his soldiers went and got Daniel”
- **lions’ den** - This may refer to a room or pit where lions were kept. See how you translated this in [6:7](#).
- **May your God ... rescue you** - The king is expressing his desire for God to save Daniel.
- **rescue you** - “save you from the lions”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 06 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 6:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ They rolled a huge stone across the entrance to the pit. Then the king sealed the entrance with his signet ring, and the other officials also sealed the entrance with their signet rings, so that nothing could be done for Daniel. ¹⁸ The king returned to his palace. That night he refused to eat any food. He would not allow anyone to entertain him and that night he was unable to sleep.

ULB:

¹⁷ A stone was brought over the entrance to the den, and the king sealed it with his own signet ring and with the signet rings of his nobles so that nothing might be changed concerning Daniel. ¹⁸ Then the king went to his palace and he went through the night fasting. No entertainment was brought before him, and sleep fled from him.

translationWords:

- king
- Daniel
- palace
- fast

translationNotes:

- **den** - This may refer to a room or pit where lions were kept. See how you translated this in [6:7](#).
- **the king sealed it with his own signet ring and with the signet rings of his nobles ... concerning Daniel** - The function of the signet ring can be stated clearly. The king and the noblemen pressed their rings into a seal made of wax. AT: “the king pressed his signet ring into a wax seal, the nobles did this too. No one was allowed to break the seal and help Daniel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **nothing might be changed concerning Daniel** - “no one could help Daniel”
- **he went through the night fasting** - This symbolic act showed that the king was worried about Daniel. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))
- **No entertainment was brought before him** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “He did not have anyone entertain him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **sleep fled from him** - Sleep is spoken of as if it could run away from the king. AT: “he did not sleep at all that night” (See: [Personification](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 06 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 6:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ At dawn the next morning, the king got up and went quickly to the pit where the lions were. ²⁰ When he came near it, he was very worried. He called out, fearing the worst, “Daniel, you who serve the living God! Was your God—whom you worship always—able to save you from the lions?”

ULB:

¹⁹ Then at daybreak the king got up and he quickly went to the lions’ den. ²⁰ As he came near to the den, he called out to Daniel in a sad voice, saying to Daniel, “Daniel, servant of the living God, has your God, whom you serve continually, been able to save you from the lions?”

translationWords:

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [God](#)
- [save, safe](#)

translationNotes:

- **lions’ den** - This may refer to a room or pit where lions were kept. See how you translated this in [6:7](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 06 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 6:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ Daniel answered, "O king, may you live forever! ²² Yes, my God sent his angel to shut the lions' mouths and they have not hurt me! He knows that I have done nothing wrong, and you know, O king, I never did anything wrong to you either!"

ULB:

²¹ Then said Daniel to the king, "King, live forever! ²² My God has sent his messenger and has shut the lions' mouths, and they have not hurt me. For I was found blameless before him and also before you, king, and I have done you no harm."

translationWords:

- forever
- messenger
- blameless

translationNotes:

- **For I was found blameless** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "He knows that I have done nothing wrong" (UDB) (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **I have done you no harm** - "I have not harmed you at all"

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 06 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 6:23**UDB:**

²³ The king was extremely happy, and he commanded his servants to lift Daniel out of the pit. When they did that, they saw that the lions had not wounded him at all. God had protected him because he trusted in him.

ULB:

²³ Then the king was very happy. He gave an order that they should take Daniel up out of the den. So Daniel was lifted up out of the den. No harm was found on him, because he had trusted in his God.

translationWords:

- [trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)

translationNotes:

- **den** - This may refer to a room or pit where lions were kept. See how you translated this in [6:7](#).
- **No harm was found on him** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "They did not find any wounds on Daniel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 06 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 6:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ Then the king commanded that the men who had accused Daniel be seized and thrown into the pit of lions—along with their wives and children. When they were thrown into the pit, the lions leaped on them and crushed their bones before they fell to the bottom of the pit.

²⁵ Then King Darius wrote this message and sent it throughout his kingdom to all the people, to every nation, and to all the people no matter what language they spoke:

”I wish that all things go very well with you!

ULB:

²⁴ The king gave an order, and they brought those men who had accused Daniel and threw them into the den of lions—they, their children, and their wives. Before they reached the floor, the lions overpowered them and broke all their bones to pieces. ²⁵ Then King Darius wrote to all the peoples, nations, and languages that live in all the earth:

”May peace increase for you.

translationWords:

- Darius
- lion
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- nation
- earth, earthly
- peace, peaceful

translationNotes:

- **den of lions** - This may refer to a room or pit where lions were kept. See how you translated this in 6:7.
- **Before they reached the floor** - “Before they reached the floor of the lions’ den”
- **broke all their bones to pieces** - “crushed their bones” (UDB)
- **peoples, nations, and languages** - Here “nations” and “languages” represent people from different nations who speak different languages. See how you translated this in 3:4. AT: “people from different nations and who spoke different languages” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **in all the earth** - King Darius wrote his message to his entire kingdom which was huge. Here it says “all the earth” to emphasis how large his kingdom was, though it did not include everyone on the earth. AT: “in his kingdom” (See: **Hyperbole**)

- **May peace increase for you** - This is a form of greeting that is used to wish someone well in all areas of life.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 06 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 6:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ I command that everyone in my kingdom should fear and revere the God that Daniel worships.

He is the living God,
and he will live forever.

His kingdom will never be destroyed;
he will rule until the end.

²⁷ He rescues and saves his people,
he performs all kinds of signs and wonders
in heaven and on the earth.

He rescued Daniel from the power of the lions!”

ULB:

²⁶ I hereby make a decree that in all the dominion of my kingdom men tremble and fear before the God of Daniel,

for he is the living God and lives forever,
and his kingdom shall not be destroyed;
his dominion shall be to the end.

²⁷ He makes us safe and rescues us,
and he does signs and wonders
in heaven and in earth;
he has kept Daniel safe from the strength of the lions.”

translationWords:

- decree
- dominion
- kingdom
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- life, live, living, alive
- forever
- miracle, wonder, sign
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthly
- power, powers

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - This continues to state the message that Darius sent to everyone in his kingdom.
- **tremble and fear** - These two words are similar and can be combined. AT: “shake with fear” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **the God of Daniel** - “the God that Daniel worships” (UDB)
- **he is the living God and lives forever** - The two phrases “the living God” and “lives forever” express the same concept, that God lives forever. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **his kingdom shall ... his dominion shall** - These two phrases are parallel, emphasizing how God’s kingdom will never end. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **his kingdom shall not be destroyed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “no one will destroy his kingdom” or “his kingdom will last forever” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **his dominion shall be to the end** - “he will rule forever”
- **he has kept Daniel safe from the strength of the lions** - “he has not allowed the strong lions to hurt Daniel”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 06 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 6:28**UDB:**

²⁸ So Daniel was very successful all during the time that Darius ruled and during the time that Cyrus, the king of Persia, ruled.

ULB:

²⁸ So Daniel prospered during the reign of Darius and during the reign of Cyrus the Persian.

translationWords:

- [Daniel](#)
- [reign](#)
- [Darius](#)
- [Cyrus](#)
- [Persia, Persians](#)

translationNotes:

- **during the reign of Darius and during the reign of Cyrus the Persian** - Cyrus the Persian was the king who ruled after Darius.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 06 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 06 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart extended quotations, prayers or songs. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 7:9-14, 23-27, which is the poetic part of the quotation.

Special concepts in this chapter

The four beasts

There will be four successive kingdoms before Yahweh sets up his eternal kingdom. (See: [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

The Son of Man

God will give the Son of Man an eternal kingdom and he will judge people from the books. (See: [Son of Man](#), [son of man](#) and [judge](#), [judgment](#))

Links:

- [Daniel 07:01 Notes](#)

Daniel 7:1-3

UDB:

¹ In the first year that Belshazzar was the king of Babylonia, Daniel had a dream one night as he lay in bed. He saw certain things that he wrote down the next morning. This is what he said:

² "I, Daniel, had a dream during the night. In my dream I saw that strong winds were blowing from all four directions, stirring up the water on the sea. ³ Then I saw four large animals coming out of the sea. Each of the four was different from the others.

ULB:

⁷ ¹ In the first year of Belshazzar king of Babylonia, Daniel had a dream and visions in his mind while lying on his bed. Then he wrote down what he had seen in the dream. He wrote down the most important events: ² Daniel explained, "In my vision at night I saw that the four winds of heaven were stirring up the great sea. ³ Four large animals, each one different from the other, came up out of the sea.

translationWords:

- king
- Babylon, Babylonian
- Daniel
- dream
- vision

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Chapters 7 and 8 are not in chronological order. They happened while Belshazzar was still the king, before the rule of Darius and Cyrus that was discussed in chapter 6.
- **General Information:** - In Daniel's vision, he saw animals that were symbols of other things. Later in the vision someone explains the meaning of those symbols. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **Belshazzar** - This was the name of Nebuchadnezzar's son, who became king after him. See how you wrote this name in [5:1](#).
- **a dream and visions** - The words "dream" and "visions" both refer to the same dream that is described in this chapter. AT: "visions while he was dreaming" (See: [Doublet](#))
- **the four winds of heaven** - "winds from everywhere" or "strong winds from all four directions" (UDB)
- **stirring up** - "whipped up" or "agitated" or "caused high waves in"

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 7:4-5

UDB:

⁴ The first one resembled a lion, but it had wings like an eagle has. But as I watched, something tore off its wings and the animal was left there, standing, like a human being. It was given a mind like humans have.

⁵ The second animal resembled a bear. It was crouching and holding between its teeth three ribs from some creature. Someone said to it, 'Stand up and eat many people!'

ULB:

⁴ The first was like a lion but had eagle's wings. As I was looking, its wings were torn off and it was lifted from the ground and made to stand on two feet, like a man. The mind of a man was given to it. ⁵ Then there was a second animal, like a bear, and it was bending over; it had three ribs between its teeth in its mouth. It was told, 'Get up and devour many people.'

translationWords:

- lion
- eagle
- mind
- devour

translationNotes:

- **The first was like a lion but had eagle's wings** - This was a symbolic creature, and not an animal that exists. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **its wings were torn off and it was lifted from the ground and made to stand on two feet, like a man** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "someone tore off its wings and lifted it up from the ground and made it stand on two feet like a human being" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **The mind of a man was given to it** - Here "mind" refers to thinking. This can be stated in active form. AT: "Someone gave it the ability to think like a human being" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **a second animal, like a bear** - This was not an actual bear, but a symbolic animal that was similar to a bear. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **ribs** - large curved bones of the chest that connect to the spine
- **It was told** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "Someone told it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)

- Daniel 07 General Notes
- Daniel 07 Translation Questions

Daniel 7:6-7

UDB:

⁶ Then I saw in front of me the third of these animals. It resembled a leopard, but on its back it had four wings like a bird's wings. It had four heads and it was given the power to rule people.

⁷ In the vision I saw a fourth animal. It was stronger than the other animals and more terrifying. It crushed other creatures with its huge iron teeth and ate their flesh. The parts of animals that it did not grind with its teeth, it walked over on the ground. It was different from the other three animals. It had ten horns on its head.

ULB:

⁶ After this I looked again. There was another animal, one that looked like a leopard. On its back it had four wings like bird wings, and it had four heads. It was given authority to rule. ⁷ After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns.

translationWords:

- leopard
- authority

translationNotes:

- **another animal, one that looked like a leopard** - This was not an actual leopard, but a symbolic animal that was similar to a leopard. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **four wings ... four heads** - The four wings and four heads are symbols, but their meaning is unclear. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **it had four heads** - “the animal had four heads”
- **It was given authority to rule** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Someone gave it authority to rule” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **a fourth animal ... it had ten horns** - This is also not an actual animal. It is a symbolic creature. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **trampled underfoot** - “walked on and crushed”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 7:8

UDB:

⁸ While I was looking at those horns, I saw a little horn appear on the head of that animal. It tore out three of the other horns. This little horn had eyes like a human has and a mouth that boasted about great things.

ULB:

⁸ While I was considering the horns, I looked and saw another horn grow up among them, a little horn. Three of the first horns were wrenched out by the roots. I saw in this horn eyes like the eyes of a man and a mouth that was boasting about great things.

translationWords:

- [boast, boastful](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Daniel continues to describe his vision of the fourth animal that the saw in [7:7](#).
- **the horns** - Translators may write a footnote like this: “Horns are a symbol of power and represent powerful leaders.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Three of the first horns were wrenched out by the roots** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The little horn tore out three of the first horns” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **a mouth that was boasting about great things** - Here the horn was boasting, using its mouth to do so. AT: “the horn had a mouth and boasted about doing great things” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 7:9**UDB:**

⁹ Then while I watched,
 thrones were set up for judges,
 and God, The One who Lives Forever, sat on one of the thrones.
His clothes were as white as snow,
 and his hair was as white as pure wool.
His throne was burning with fire,
 and it had wheels that were also burning.

ULB:

⁹ As I looked,
 thrones were set in place,
 and the Ancient of Days took his seat.
His clothing was as white as snow,
 and the hair of his head was like pure wool.
His throne was flames of fire,
 and its wheels were burning fire.

translationWords:

- throne
- snow
- fire

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Most of the text of verses 9-14 is symbolic language with parallel lines that have similar meaning. For this reason, the ULB and UDB present them in poetic form. (See: [Symbolic Language](#) and [Parallelism](#))
- **thrones were set in place** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “someone set thrones in their places” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the Ancient of Days** - This is a title for God that means he is eternal. AT: “the One Who Has Lived Forever” or “the One Who Has Always Lived”

- **took his seat ... His clothing ... the hair of his head** - This passage describes God as sitting down, with clothing and hair like a person. This does not mean that God really is like this, but it is how Daniel saw God in a vision.
- **took his seat** - This is an idiom that means he sat down. AT: “sat down on his throne” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **His clothing was as white as snow** - His clothing is compared to snow to show that it was very white. AT: “His clothing was very white”
- **the hair of his head was like pure wool** - Something about God’s hair looked like pure wool. Possible meanings are that 1) it was very white (UDB) or 2) it was thick and curly. (See: [Simile](#))
- **pure wool** - “clean wool” or “wool that is washed”
- **His throne was flames ... its wheels were burning fire** - This describes the throne of God and its wheels as if they were made of fire. The words “flames” and “burning fire” mean basically the same thing and can be translated the same way.
- **its wheels** - It is unclear why God’s throne is described as having wheels. Thrones normally do not have wheels, but the text clearly states that this throne has some kind of wheels. Use a general term for “wheels” if possible.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 7:10**UDB:**

¹⁰ Fire poured out in front of him like water in a river.

Millions of people were there serving him,
 and a hundred million other people were standing in front of him.
 The court was called into session,
 and they opened the books.

ULB:

¹⁰ A river of fire flowed out from before him;

millions served him,
 and one hundred million were standing before him.
 The court was in session,
 and the books were opened.

translationWords:

- fire
- serve, service
- minister, ministry

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Daniel continues to describe his vision of the court in heaven and the response to the fourth animal that he saw in [7:7](#).
- **General Information:** - Most of the text of verses 9-14 is symbolic language with parallel lines that have similar meaning. For this reason, the ULB and UDB present them in poetic form. (See: [Symbolic Language](#) and [Parallelism](#))
- **A river of fire flowed out from before him** - The quick way in which fire came from the presence of God is spoken of as if it was water flowing in a river. AT: “Fire poured out in front of him like water in a river” (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **before him** - The word “him” refers to God, the Ancient of Days from [7:9](#).
- **millions** - This probably refers to a large group rather than to a precise number. AT: “thousands of thousands” or “great numbers of people”
- **one hundred million** - This probably refers to a large group rather than to a precise number. AT: “tens of thousands times tens of thousands” or “uncountable numbers of people”

- **The court was in session** - This means that God, the judge, was ready to investigate the evidence and make his judgment. AT: “The judge was ready to judge” or “The judge was seated”
- **the books were opened** - These are the books that contain the evidence to be used in court. AT: “the books of evidence were opened”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 7:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ While I was watching, I could hear the little horn speaking very boastfully. As I continued to watch, the fourth animal was killed. Its corpse was thrown into a fire and completely burned.
¹² The power of the other three animals was taken away from them, but they were allowed to continue to live for a specific period of time.

ULB:

¹¹ I continued to look because of the boastful words spoken by the horn. I watched while the animal was killed, and its body was destroyed, and it was given over to be burned up. ¹² As for the rest of the four animals, their authority to rule was taken away, but their lives were prolonged for a period of time.

translationWords:

- boast, boastful
- authority

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Daniel continues to describe his vision of the court in heaven and the response to the fourth animal that he saw in 7:7.
- **the animal was killed ... to be burned up** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “they killed the fourth animal, destroyed its body, and gave it to someone to burn it up” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the animal was killed** - The animal was killed because the judge determined that it was guilty. AT: “they executed the animal” or “the judge commanded and they killed the animal” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the animal** - This refers to the fourth animal that had the ten horns and the horn that spoke boastfully. AT: “the most frightening animal” or “the animal that had the boastful horn”
- **the rest of the four animals** - It may be clearer to say, “the other three animals.”
- **their authority to rule was taken away** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the judge took away their authority to rule” or “their authority to rule ended” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **their lives were prolonged for a period of time** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “they continued to live for a period of time” or “the judge let them live a little longer” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 7:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ I also saw that night someone coming who resembled a son of man, that is, he had a human figure. He was coming close, surrounded by clouds, and he came to The One who Lives Forever and was presented to him in honor. ¹⁴ He was given authority to rule over all the nations in the world; royal honor was given to him. He will rule forever—he will never stop ruling. The kingdom that he rules will never be destroyed.

ULB:

¹³ In my visions that night,

I saw one coming with the clouds of heaven like a son of man;
he came to the Ancient of Days
and was presented before him.

¹⁴ Authority to rule and glory and royal power were given to him
so that all the peoples, nations, and languages should serve him.
His authority to rule is an everlasting authority that will not pass away,
and his kingdom is one that will never be destroyed.

translationWords:

- vision
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Son of Man, son of man
- authority
- glory, glorious
- royal
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- nation
- serve, service
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- kingdom

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Most of the text of verses 9-14 is symbolic language with parallel lines that have similar meaning. For this reason, the ULB and UDB present them in poetic form. (See: [Symbolic Language](#) and [Parallelism](#))

- **I saw one coming ... like a son of man** - The person that Daniel saw was not a normal man, but had a human figure like a man. “I also saw that night someone coming who resembled a son of man, that is, he had a human figure” (UDB) (See: [Simile](#))
- **with the clouds of heaven** - “with the clouds of the sky”
- **the Ancient of Days** - This refers to God who is eternal. See how you translated this title in [7:9](#)
- **was presented before him** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “they presented this son of man to the Ancient of Days” or “he stood before him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Authority to rule and glory and royal power were given to him** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “The one who looked like a son of man received authority to rule, glory, and royal power” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **royal power** - This, here, refers to “authority.”
- **peoples, nations, and languages** - Here “nations” and “languages” represent people from different nations who speak different languages. See how you translated this in [3:4](#). AT: “people from different nations and who speak different languages” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **will not pass away ... will never be destroyed** - These two phrases mean the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **that will never be destroyed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “that no one will ever destroy” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 7:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ As for me, Daniel, I was very sad by what I had seen in that vision; I was so troubled, I did not know what to think about it. ¹⁶ I went to one of those who were standing in front of the throne of God, and I asked him to tell me what it meant.

ULB:

¹⁵ As for me, Daniel, my spirit was grieved inside of me, and the visions I saw in my mind troubled me. ¹⁶ I approached one of them standing there and asked him to show me the meaning of these things.

translationWords:

- Daniel
- spirit, spiritual
- vision
- mind
- trouble, troubles, troubled

translationNotes:

- **my spirit was grieved inside of me ... the visions I saw in my mind troubled me** - These two phrases describe how Daniel was feeling. The second one gives more information about the first one, explaining about his grieved spirit. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **my spirit was grieved inside of me** - Here “my spirit” refers to Daniel himself. AT: “I was very sad inside” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **one of them standing there** - This is one of the heavenly beings who were standing before God’s throne (UDB). Possible meanings 1) these are angels, spirits who serve God 2) these are people who have died and are now in heaven.
- **to show me** - “to tell me” (UDB) or “to explain to me”
- **these things** - “the things I had seen”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 7:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ He said, 'The four large animals represent four kings who will come to power on the earth. ¹⁸ But the Most High will enable the people who belong to him to rule in the kingdom forever.'

ULB:

¹⁷ 'These large animals, four in number, are four kings that will arise from the earth. ¹⁸ But the holy people of the Most High will receive the kingdom, and they will possess it forever and ever.'

translationWords:

- king
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- saints
- Most High
- kingdom
- possess, possession
- forever

translationNotes:

- **These large animals, four in number**, - "These four large animals"
- **are four kings** - "represent four kings"
- **four kings that will arise from the earth** - Here "from the earth" means they are real people. AT: "four kings who will come to power on the earth" (UDB) or "four men who will rise up from among the people of the earth and become kings" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **they will possess it** - "they will rule over it"
- **forever and ever** - This repetition of ideas emphasizes that this kingdom will never come to an end. (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 7:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Then I wanted to know more about what the fourth animal represented—the animal that was different from the other three, the animal that crushed those whom it attacked with its bronze claws and then ate their flesh with its iron teeth, the animal that walked over the parts of their bodies that it did not eat. ²⁰ I also wanted to know about the ten horns on its head and about the horn that appeared later, which got rid of three of the other horns. I wanted to know what it meant that it had eyes and a mouth with which it spoke very boastfully. That horn was more terrifying than the other horns.

ULB:

¹⁹ Then I wanted to know more about the fourth animal—it was so different from the others and very horrifying with its iron teeth and bronze claws; it devoured, broke into pieces, and trampled on what was left with its feet. ²⁰ I wanted to know about the ten horns on its head, and about the other horn that grew up, and before which the three horns fell down. I wanted to know about the horn that had eyes and about the mouth that boasted about great things and that seemed greater than its companions.

translationWords:

- bronze
- devour
- boast, boastful
- companion

translationNotes:

- **very horrifying** - “very frightening”
- **trampled** - “walked on and crushed”
- **the ten horns on its head** - “the ten horns on the head of the fourth animal”
- **grew up, and before which the three horns fell down** - “grew up, and about the three horns that fell down in front of it” or “grew up, and about the three horns that fell down because of it”
- **before which the three horns fell down** - Here “fell down” is a euphemism that means they were destroyed.” AT: “which destroyed the three horns” (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **the mouth that boasted** - “its mouth that boasted” or “the mouth of the new horn, that boasted”
- **that seemed greater than its companions** - the horn with the eyes and a mouth seemed to be greater than the other horns

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 7:21-22

UDB:

²¹ While I was having this vision, I saw that this horn attacked God's people and was defeating them.

²² But then The One who Lives Forever came and judged in favor of the people who belonged to him. Then it was time for God's people to be able to rule.

ULB:

²¹ As I looked, this horn waged war against the holy people and was defeating them ²² until the Ancient of Days came, and justice was given to the holy people of the Most High. Then the time came when the holy people received the kingdom.

translationWords:

- just, justice, justly
- holy, holiness
- people of God, my people
- kingdom

translationNotes:

- **this horn** - "this fourth horn." This refers to the horn that is described in 7:20.
- **until the Ancient of Days came, and justice was given** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "until the Ancient of Days came and brought justice" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Ancient of Days** - This is a title for God that emphasizes that he is eternal. See how you translated this title in 7:9.
- **the holy people received the kingdom** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "God gave his kingdom to his holy people" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 7:23-24**UDB:**

²³ Then the man who was standing there said to me, 'The fourth animal represents an empire that will exist on the earth; that empire will be different from all other empires. The army of that empire will crush people all over the world and trample on their bodies. ²⁴ As for its ten horns, they represent ten kings who will rule that empire, one after the other. Then another king will appear. He will be different from the previous kings. He will defeat the three kings that were represented by the three horns that were pulled out.

ULB:

²³ This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal,
 it will be a fourth kingdom on earth
 that will be different from all the other kingdoms.
 It will devour the whole earth,
 and it will trample it down
 and break it into pieces.
²⁴ As for the ten horns,
 out of this kingdom ten kings will arise,
 and another will arise after them.
 He will be different from the previous ones,
 and he will conquer the three kings.

translationWords:

- kingdom
- earth, earthly
- devour
- king

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Most of the text of verses 23-27 is symbolic language. For this reason, the ULB presents them in poetic form. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **This is what that person said** - This is the person that Daniel approached in [7:16](#).
- **that person said** - "that person answered"

- **As for the fourth animal ... As for the ten horns** - “Concerning the fourth animal ... Concerning the ten horns” or “Now, about the fourth animal ... Now, about the ten horns”
- **It will devour ... it into pieces** - This does not mean the fourth kingdom will destroy the planet, but that it will brutally attack, conquer, and destroy all other kingdoms on earth. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **out of this kingdom ten kings will arise** - They will rule one after the other. This can be stated explicitly. AT: “ten kings will rule over this fourth kingdom, one after another” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **another will arise after them** - This other king is not one of the ten. It may be helpful to refer to him as “the eleventh king.” AT: “after that an eleventh king will become powerful” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **He will be different from the previous ones** - “He will be different from the other ten kings”
- **he will conquer the three kings** - He will defeat three of the original ten kings. It may be helpful to state that those three kings are represented by the three horns that were pulled out. AT: “he will defeat the three kings that were represented by the three horns that were pulled out” (UDB) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 7:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ He will say things against the Most High, and he will oppress God's people. He will try to change the times of the sacred festivals and their laws. He will control them for three and a half years.

²⁶ But the court will be convened, and they will take his kingdom away and it will be completely destroyed.

ULB:

²⁵ He will speak words against the Most High

and will oppress the holy people of the Most High God.

He will try to change the festivals and the law.

These things will be given into his hand

for one year, two years, and half a year.

²⁶ But the court will be in session,

and they will take his royal power away

to be consumed and destroyed at the end.

translationWords:

- Most High
- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- holy, holiness
- festival
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- royal

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The man in Daniel's vision continues talking to Daniel.
- **General Information:** - Most of the text of verses 23-27 is symbolic language. For this reason, the ULB presents them in poetic form. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **He will speak words against the Most High** - This means that the newest king will openly disagree with and say bad things about the Most High. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **He will try ... into his hand** - The words "He" and "his" refer to the newest king, not the Most High.
- **the holy people** - "God's holy people"

- **change the festivals and the law** - Both terms refer to the law of Moses. The festivals were an important part of the religion of Israel in the Old Testament.
- **These things will be given into his hand** - Here “his hand” refers to his control. This can be stated in active form. AT: “The newest king will control the religious festivals and laws” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **one year, two years, and half a year** - This means “three and half years” (UDB). This is not the normal way the Israelites counted. Try to translate it in a way that preserves this way of counting. AT: “one year plus two years plus six months”
- **the court will be in session** - This means that the judge will be ready to investigate evidence and make his judgment. AT: “the judge will judge” or “The judge will sit down”
- **they will take his royal power away** - “the members of the court will take the royal power away from the newest king”
- **royal power** - This, here, refers to “authority.” See how you translated this in [7:14](#).
- **to be consumed and destroyed at the end** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “and consume and destroy it in the end” or “and completely destroy his royal power in the end” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 7:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ Then the kingdom, the power to rule, and the greatness of the kingdoms under the whole of heaven will be given to the holy people who belong to the Most High. The kingdom that he rules is a kingdom that is everlasting, and all kings and rulers will serve and obey him.'

²⁸ That is what I saw in my vision. I, Daniel, was terrified, with the result that my face became pale. But I did not tell anyone about the vision that I had seen."

ULB:

²⁷ The kingdom and the dominion,
 and the greatness of the kingdoms under the whole heaven,
 will be given to the people
 who belong to the holy people of the Most High.
 His kingdom is an everlasting kingdom,
 and all other kingdoms will serve and obey him.'

²⁸ Here is the end of the matter. As for me, Daniel, my thoughts greatly alarmed me and my face changed in appearance. But I kept these things to myself."

translationWords:

- kingdom
- dominion
- people of God, my people
- holy, holiness
- Most High
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- serve, service
- obey, obedient, obedience
- Daniel

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The man in Daniel's vision continues talking to Daniel.
- **General Information:** - Most of the text of verses 23-27 is symbolic language. For this reason, the ULB presents them in poetic form. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

- **The kingdom and the dominion ... will be given to the people** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God will give the kingdom and the dominion ... to the people” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **The kingdom and the dominion** - These two terms mean basically the same thing and emphasize that this will concern all forms of official authority. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **the greatness of the kingdoms** - The abstract noun “greatness” can be translated with the adjective “great.” AT: “everything that is great about the kingdoms” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **of the kingdoms under the whole heaven** - The idiom “under the whole heaven” refers to the kingdoms on earth. AT: “of all the kingdoms on earth” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **His kingdom** - “The kingdom of the Most High”
- **an everlasting kingdom** - “a kingdom that will exist forever” or “a kingdom that will never end”
- **Here is the end of the matter** - This means that Daniel has finished describing the vision. AT: “That is what I saw in my vision” (UDB) or “This is the end of the description of what I saw in my vision”
- **my face changed in appearance** - “my face became pale”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 07 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 07 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 8 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The vision of the ram and male goat

Although specific interpretation of this vision is not given, most scholars believe Daniel saw Greece overthrowing Media-Persia, before breaking up into four kingdoms. One of these kingdom stopped the temple worship for a while and then it was restored. (See: [temple](#) and [restore, restoration](#))

Links:

- [Daniel 08:01 Notes](#)

Daniel 8:1-2

UDB:

¹ During the third year that Belshazzar was the king of Babylonia, I, Daniel, had another vision. ² In that vision I was in Susa, the fortified city in the province of Elam. I was standing beside the Ulai Canal.

ULB:

8 ¹ In the third year of the reign of King Belshazzar, I, Daniel, had a vision appear to me (after the one that appeared to me at first). ² I saw in the vision, as I was looking, that I was in the fortified city of Susa in the province of Elam. I saw in the vision that I was beside the Ulai Canal.

translationWords:

- biblical time: year
- reign
- king
- Daniel
- vision
- Elam

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Chapters 7 and 8 are not in chronological order. They happened while Belshazzar was still the king, before the rule of Darius and Cyrus that was discussed in chapter 6.
- **General Information:** - In Daniel's vision, he saw animals that were symbols of other things. Later in the vision someone explains the meaning of those symbols. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **In the third year** - "In year three" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **Belshazzar** - This is the son of Nebuchadnezzar who became king after his father. See how you translated this name in [5:1](#).
- **had a vision appear to me (after the one ... first)** - This is background information to remind the reader that this is Daniel's second vision. AT: "had a second vision appear to me" (See: [Background Information](#))
- **fortified** - guarded and protected
- **Susa ... Elam ... Ulai Canal** - These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Canal** - A canal is a narrow man-made waterway.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 08 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 8:3-4

UDB:

³ I looked up and saw a ram that was standing alongside the canal. It had two long horns, but the one that grew last was longer than the one that grew first. ⁴ The ram butted away with its horns at everything that was west and everything that was north and everything that was south of it. There were no other animals that were able to oppose it, and none who could stop him. The ram did whatever it wanted to do and became very powerful.

ULB:

³ I looked up and saw before me a ram with two horns, standing beside the canal. One horn was longer than the other, but the longer one grew more slowly than the shorter and was passed up in length by it. ⁴ I saw the ram charging west, then north, and then south; no other animal could stand before him. None of them was able to rescue anyone out of his hand. He did whatever he wanted, and he became great.

translationWords:

- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

translationNotes:

- **a ram with two horns** It is normal for rams to have two horns. These horns, however, have symbolic meaning. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **but the longer ... passed up in length by it** - “but the longer one grew more slowly than the shorter one, and the shorter one grew to be even longer than it”
- **I saw the ram charging** - “I saw the ram rushing” or “I saw the ram running very quickly”
- **to rescue anyone out of his hand** - Rams do not have hands. Here “hand” refers to the ram’s power. AT: “to rescue anyone from him” or “to rescue anyone from his power” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 08 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 8:5-6

UDB:

⁵ While I thinking about what I had seen, I saw a goat come from the west. It ran across the land very quickly; it seemed that its feet did not touch the ground. This goat had one very large horn between its eyes. ⁶ It ran straight toward the ram with two horns, the ram that was standing alongside the canal, and the goat ran toward it in a terrible rage.

ULB:

⁵ As I was thinking about this, I saw a male goat come from the west, who went across the surface of the whole earth, running fast, not seeming to touch the ground. The goat had a large horn between his eyes. ⁶ He came to the ram who had two horns—I had seen the ram standing on the bank of the canal—and the goat ran toward the ram in a powerful rage.

translationWords:

- goat, kid
- face
- rage

translationNotes:

- **across the surface of the whole earth** - H The phrase “the whole earth” is an exaggeration that means he came from far away. AT: “from far away across the surface of the land” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Hyperbole](#))
- **The goat had a large horn between his eyes** - Goats have two horns on the sides of their heads. This image should be explained. AT: “The goat had a single large horn in the center of his head” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **I had seen the ram standing on the bank of the canal** - This phrase is inserted as background information to explain where the ram was located. (See: [Background Information](#))
- **in a powerful rage** - “and it was very angry”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 08 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 8:7-8

UDB:

⁷ The goat struck the ram furiously and broke off its two horns. The goat knocked the ram down to the ground and trampled on it. No one could rescue the ram from the goat's power. ⁸ The goat became very powerful. But when its power was very great, its great horn was broken off. Four other distinctive horns grew up in its place. Each one pointed to one of the four winds in the sky: north, south, east, and west.

ULB:

⁷ I saw the goat come close to the ram. He was very angry at the ram, and he hit the ram and broke off its two horns. The ram was powerless to stand before him. The goat knocked him down to the ground and trampled on him. There was no one who could rescue the ram from his power. ⁸ Then the goat became very large. But when he became strong, the large horn was broken, and in its place four other large horns grew up that pointed toward the four winds of the heavens.

translationWords:

- [goat, kid](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)

translationNotes:

- **trampled** - to crush something by stepping on it
- **the ram from his power** - “the ram from the goat because of his power”
- **the goat became very large** - “the goat became very large and strong”
- **the large horn was broken** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “something broke off the large horn” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **toward the four winds of the heavens** - Here “the four winds of heaven” is an idiom that refers to the four main directions (north, east, south, west) from which the winds blow. AT: “in four different directions” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 08 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 8:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ Then from one of those four horns appeared a little horn. It became very great and pointed toward the south and then toward the east and then toward the beautiful land of Israel. ¹⁰ That horn became very strong, with the result that it attacked some of the soldiers of the army of heaven and some of the stars in the sky. It threw some of them to the earth and trampled on them.

ULB:

⁹ Out of one of them grew another horn, little at first, but which became very large in the south, in the east, and in the land of beauty. ¹⁰ It became so large as to engage in war with the army of heaven. Some of that army and some of the stars were thrown down to the earth, and it trampled on them.

translationWords:

- [glory, glorious](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)

translationNotes:

- **but which became very large** - “but it became very large”
- **in the south, in the east, and in the land of beauty** - This probably means it pointed in those directions. This can be stated. AT: “and pointed toward the south and then toward the east and then toward the beautiful land of Israel” (UDB)
- **the land of beauty** - This is a reference to the land of Israel. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **It became so large as to engage in war** - Here the horn is given qualities of a person and is engaging in war. (See: [Personification](#))
- **Some of that army ... thrown down to the earth** - This can be stated in active form. AT: The horn threw some of that army and some of the stars down to the earth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **it trampled on them** - Here the horn is given qualities of a person that tramples on the stars and on the army. (See: [Personification](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 08 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 8:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ It set itself up to be as great as the commander of the army of heaven, and it took away the daily offerings of sacrifices from him, and it also defiled the place of his temple. ¹² Because of rebellion, the army of heaven will falter, and the constant burnt offerings will be taken away. It will throw truth to the ground. The bad things it does will succeed.

ULB:

¹¹ It made itself to be as great as the commander of the army. It took away from him the regular burnt offering, and the place of his sanctuary was polluted. ¹² Because of rebellion, the army will be given over to the goat's horn, and the burnt offering will be stopped. The horn will throw truth down to the ground, and it will succeed in what it does.

translationWords:

- **divine**
- **commander, command**
- **burnt offering, offering by fire**
- **sanctuary**
- **rebel, rebellious, rebellion**
- **true, truth, come true**

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Daniel continues describing his vision of the horn. (See: **8:9**)
- **General Information:** - The horn is given qualities of a person. (See: **Personification**)
- **the commander of the army** - This refers to God himself, who is the leader of the angel army. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **It took away from him the regular burnt offering** - Here “took away” means the horn stopped the offering. Here “him” refers to God, the commander of the army. AT: “It stopped the people from making their regular burnt offering to him”
- **the place of his sanctuary was polluted** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “it defiled his sanctuary” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **The horn will throw truth down to the ground** - The horn ignoring truth and godliness is spoken of as if it will throw truth to the ground. AT: “The horn will reject the truth” (See: **Metaphor**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 08 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 8:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ Then I heard two angels who were talking to each other. One of them asked, “How long will the things that were in this vision continue? How long will the man who rebels against God and causes the temple to be defiled be able to prevent priests from offering sacrifices? How long will he trample on the temple and on the armies of heaven?”

¹⁴ The other angel replied, “It will continue for 2,300 days. During each of those days, people will not be permitted to offer sacrifices in the morning or in the evening. After that, the temple will be purified and set in order again.”

ULB:

¹³ Then I heard a holy one speaking and another holy one answering him, “How long will these things last, this vision about the burnt offering, the sin that brings destruction, the handing over of the sanctuary, and heaven’s army being trampled on?” ¹⁴ He said to me, “It will last for 2,300 evenings and mornings. After that the sanctuary will be put right.”

translationWords:

- [holy, holiness](#)
- [vision](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [sanctuary](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)

translationNotes:

- **holy one** - “angel”
- **the handing over of the sanctuary** - “the surrender of the sanctuary”
- **heaven’s army being trampled on** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the horn trampling on heaven’s army” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **2,300 evenings and mornings** - Here “evenings and mornings” is a merism that refers to everything in between, which means full days. AT: “2,300 sunsets and sunrises” or “2,300 days” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Merism](#))
- **the sanctuary will be put right** - “the temple will be purified and set in order again” (UDB)

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)

- Daniel 08 General Notes
- Daniel 08 Translation Questions

Daniel 8:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ While I, Daniel, was trying to understand what the vision meant, suddenly an angel who resembled a man stood in front of me. ¹⁶ And I heard a man call out between the banks of the Ulai Canal, saying, “Gabriel, explain to him the meaning of the vision that he saw!”

¹⁷ So Gabriel came and stood beside me. I was very terrified, and I fell onto the ground. But he said to me, “Man, it is necessary for you to understand that the events that you saw in the vision will occur at the time of the end.”

ULB:

¹⁵ When I, Daniel, had seen the vision, I tried to understand it. Then there stood before me one who looked like a man. ¹⁶ I heard a man’s voice calling between the banks of the Ulai Canal. He said, “Gabriel, help this man understand the vision.” ¹⁷ So he came near where I stood. When he came, I was frightened and prostrated myself on the ground. He said to me, “Understand, son of man, that the vision is for the time of the end.”

translationWords:

- Daniel
- vision
- Gabriel
- Son of Man, son of man
- time

translationNotes:

- **a man’s voice calling between the banks of the Ulai Canal** - Here a man is being referred to by his voice. AT: “a man calling from the Ulai Canal” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **Ulai Canal** - A canal is a narrow man-made waterway. See how you translated this name in [8:2](#).
- **prostrated myself on the ground** - This is an act of worship in which someone lies flat on the ground. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))
- **the time of the end** - “the final days” or “the end of the world.” This does not refer to the final moment in time, but rather to the events that will happen immediately before the end.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)

- Daniel 08 General Notes
- Daniel 08 Translation Questions

Daniel 8:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ While he was speaking, I fell into a deep sleep with my face on the ground. But Gabriel put his hand on me and lifted me up in order that I could stand again.

¹⁹ Then he said, "I have come here to show you what will happen at the time when God releases his terrible anger. These things will happen at the time God has set for the end that is coming.

ULB:

¹⁸ When he spoke to me, I fell into a deep sleep with my face to the ground. Then he touched me and made me stand up. ¹⁹ He said, "See, I will show you what will happen later in the time of wrath, because the vision concerns the appointed time for the end.

translationWords:

- [time](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [vision](#)

translationNotes:

- **a deep sleep** - This is a type of sleep when someone is sleeping heavily and does not wake up easily.
- **the time of wrath** - This refers to the time when God will judge. This can be made explicit. AT: "the time when God judges in anger" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the appointed time for the end** - "the time when the world will end"

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 08 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 8:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ As for the ram with two horns that you saw, those horns represent the kingdoms of Media and Persia. ²¹ The goat that you saw represents the kingdom of Greece, and the horn that appeared between its eyes represents its first king.

ULB:

²⁰ As for the ram you saw, the one that had two horns—they are the kings of Media and Persia. ²¹ The male goat is the king of Greece. The large horn between his eyes is the first king.

translationWords:

- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [king](#)
- [Medes, Media](#)
- [Persia, Persians](#)
- [goat, kid](#)
- [Greece](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In these verses, the angel explains to Daniel the symbolic meaning of the things he saw in his vision. The animals and horns actually represent human rulers and kingdoms. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **two horns—they are** - “two horns—they represent”
- **the kings of Media and Persia** - Possible meanings are 1) this refers to the kings of Media and Persia or 2) this is a metonymy in which the kings represents the kingdoms of Media and Persia. AT: “the kingdoms of Media and Persia” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the king of Greece** - Possible meanings are 1) this refers to the king of Greece or 2) this is a metonymy in which the king represents the kingdom of Greece. AT: “the kingdom of Greece” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **The large horn between his eyes is** - “The large horn between his eyes represents”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 08 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 8:22-23**UDB:**

²² As for the four horns that grew after the first horn was broken off, they represent four kingdoms into which that first kingdom will be divided. Those four kingdoms will not be as strong as the first kingdom.

²³ But then the time will come for those kingdoms to end. This will be after those wicked leaders will have done all the evil that God will allow them to do. Then one of those kingdoms will have a king rise up who will be very proud and very intelligent in doing evil.

ULB:

²² As for the horn that was broken, in the place of which four others arose—four kingdoms will arise from his nation, but not with his great power. ²³ At the latter time of those kingdoms, when the transgressors shall have reached their limit, a grim-faced king, one who is very intelligent, will arise.

translationWords:

- kingdom
- nation
- power, powers
- transgress, transgression
- king

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In these verses, the angel explains to Daniel the symbolic meaning of the things he saw in his vision. The animals and horns actually represented human rulers or kingdoms. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **As for the horn that was broken ... four others arose** - “Where the large horn was broken off, four others arose”
- **four kingdoms will arise from his nation** - The four horns represent the four new kingdoms. This can be made explicit. AT: “they represent the four kingdoms into which the kingdom of the first king will be divided” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **but not with his great power** - “but they will not have as much power as the king represented by the large horn”
- **At the latter time of those kingdoms** - “As those kingdoms approach their end”
- **shall have reached their limit** - “have reached their full” or “have run their course”
- **grim-faced** - This means someone who looks defiant, or like he will refuse to obey.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 08 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 8:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ He will become very powerful, but it will not be because of what he himself does. He will destroy things in many places, and he will succeed in everything he does. He will get rid of many brave soldiers and the people who are holy. ²⁵ Because he is very cunning, he will succeed by deceiving others. He will become very arrogant, and he will destroy many people without warning. He will even rebel against God, the greatest king, who will destroy him without any human power.

ULB:

²⁴ His power will be great—but not by his own power. He will be amazing in what he destroys; he will act and succeed. He will destroy powerful people, people among the holy ones. ²⁵ By his craftiness he will make deceit prosper under his hand. He will become great in his own mind. He will unexpectedly destroy many people. He will even rise up against the King of kings, and he will be broken, but not by any human hand.

translationWords:

- power, powers
- devastate, devastation
- holy, holiness
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- king

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In these verses, the angel explains to Daniel the symbolic meaning of the things he saw in his vision. The animals and horns actually represented human rulers or kingdoms. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))
- **but not by his own power** - “but someone else will give him his power”
- **he will make deceit prosper** - Here “deceit” is spoken of as if it is a person who will prosper. AT: “the amount of deception will increase” (See: [Personification](#))
- **under his hand** - Here “hand” refers to his rule. AT: “under his rule” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **King of kings** - This refers to God.
- **he will be broken** - Here “he” refers to his power. AT: “his rule will end” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **not by any human hand** - Here “hand” refers to power. This can be also stated in positive form. AT: “not by any human power” or “by divine power” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 08 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 8:26

UDB:

²⁶ These are the true visions of the evenings and the mornings. But seal them up and do not reveal the vision to others, because it will be many years before those things happen.”

ULB:

²⁶ The vision about the evenings and mornings that has been told is true. But seal up the vision, for it refers to many days in the future.”

translationWords:

- [vision](#)
- [true, truth, come true](#)
- [seal, to seal](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The angel continues to instruct Daniel about the visions that Daniel saw.
- **seal up the vision** - The angel speaks about the vision as if it were a scroll that could be closed with a wax seal. This prevented anyone from seeing the contents until the seal was broken. AT: “close and seal up what you have written about the vision” or “do not tell anyone about the vision now” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 08 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 8:27**UDB:**

²⁷ Then I, Daniel, was overcome and lay in bed weak for several days. Then I arose and returned to doing the work that the king had given to me, but I was perplexed about the vision. No one could understand it.

ULB:

²⁷ Then I, Daniel, was overcome and lay weak for several days. Then I got up, and went about the king's business. But I was appalled by the vision, and there was no one who understood it.

translationWords:

- [Daniel](#)
- [king](#)

translationNotes:

- **was overcome and lay weak for several days** - "was exhausted and lay in bed sick for several days"
- **went about the king's business** - "did the work that the king had assigned to me"
- **I was appalled by the vision** - "I was dismayed by the vision" or "I was very confused by the vision"

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 08 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 08 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 9 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Daniel told the future

Gabriel told Daniel a prophecy that Jerusalem would be rebuilt. Then later an anointed person would be killed and the worship at the temple stopped. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [anoint](#), [anointed](#) and [temple](#))

The unusual expression of numbers in 9:24-26

This passage uses the expressions “Seventy sevens of years,” “seven sevens and sixty-two sevens,” and “sixty-two sevens of years” to denote “490 years,” “49 years and then 434 years,” and “434 years” respectively. The original language uses the idea of “week” to express the idea of a group of sevens, but these numbers are clearly meant to denote years, not weeks. Most translators should use the ways normal in their languages to express these numbers.

Links:

- [Daniel 09:01 Notes](#)

Daniel 9:1-2**UDB:**

¹ In the first year of the reign of Darius (who was a descendant of the Medes and son of Ahasuerus, who conquered the Babylonians)—² in the first year that he was the king, I, Daniel, was studying in the holy books the message Yahweh had given to the prophet Jeremiah, that Jerusalem would be destroyed and remain ruined for seventy years.

ULB:

⁹ ¹ Darius was the son of Ahasuerus, a descendant of the Medes. It was Ahasuerus who had been made king over the realm of the Babylonians. ² Now in the first year of Darius' reign I, Daniel, was studying the books containing Yahweh's word, the word that had come to Jeremiah the prophet. I observed that there would be seventy years until Jerusalem's abandonment would end.

translationWords:

- Darius
- Ahasuerus
- descendant, descended from
- Medes, Media
- king
- Babylon, Babylonian
- reign
- Daniel
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Jeremiah
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Jerusalem

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Chapters 7 and 8 were not in chronological order. They happened while Belshazzar was still the king. Chapter 9 now returns to the events of the reign of Darius who became king in chapter 6.
- **It was Ahasuerus who had been made king over the realm of the Babylonians** - This is background information about who Ahasuerus was. The UDB places this in parentheses to make that clear. (See: [Background Information](#))
- **who had been made king over the realm of the Babylonians** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "who became king over the realm of the Babylonians" or "who conquered the Babylonians" (UDB). (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **over the realm** - “over the country” or “over the kingdom”
- **Yahweh** - This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.
- **there would be seventy years until Jerusalem’s abandonment would end** - “from the time Jerusalem was destroyed, it would remain in ruins for 70 years” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **abandonment** - this means no one would help or rebuild Jerusalem during that time

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 09 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 9:3-4**UDB:**

³ After I read that, I pleaded with the Lord my God by prayer and fasting to help us. I put on clothing made from old grain bags and sat in ashes.

⁴ I prayed to Yahweh my God, and I confessed the sins we had committed:

”Lord, I beg you, for you are great and powerful. You have faithfully done what you said you would do for us. You faithfully love those who love you and who do what you have commanded them to do.

ULB:

³ I turned my face to the Lord God, to seek him with prayer and requests, with fasting, wearing sackcloth, and sitting in ashes. ⁴ I prayed to Yahweh my God, and I made confession of our sins. I said, ”Please, Lord—you are the great and awesome God—you are the one who keeps the covenant and is faithful to love those who love you and keep your commandments.

translationWords:

- face
- Lord
- God
- pray, prayer
- fast
- sackcloth
- Yahweh
- confess, confession
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- awe, awesome
- covenant
- faithful, faithfulness
- love
- command, to command, commandment

translationNotes:

- **I turned my face to the Lord God** - Here “face” represents Daniel’s attention. AT: “I focused my attention on the Lord God” or “I directed my thoughts toward the Lord God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **to seek him** - Those who want to know Yahweh and please him are spoken of as if they are literally seeking to find Yahweh. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **fasting, wearing sackcloth, and sitting in ashes** - These are symbolic acts of repentance and sorrow. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))
- **I made confession of our sins** - “I confessed our sins”
- **you are the one who keeps the covenant and is faithful to love those** - “you do what what you said you would do in your covenant, and you faithfully love those”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 09 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 9:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ But we have sinned and done things that are wrong. We have done wicked things, and we have rebelled against you. We have turned away and disobeyed your commands. ⁶ Your prophets spoke for you, giving your messages to our kings, to our other rulers, to our other ancestors, and to all the Israelite people, but we did not listen to them.

ULB:

⁵ We have sinned and have done what is wrong. We have acted wickedly and we have rebelled, turning aside from your commands and decrees. ⁶ We have not listened to your servants the prophets who spoke in your name to our kings, our leaders, our ancestors, and to all the people of the land.

translationWords:

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- turn, turn away, turn back
- command, to command, commandment
- decree
- servant, slave, slavery
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- name
- king

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Daniel continues praying to the Lord about the people of Israel.
- **We have sinned and have done what is wrong** - These two phrases express one idea in two different ways for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **We have acted wickedly and we have rebelled** - These two phrases express one idea in two different ways for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **your commands and decrees** - The words “commands” and “decrees” share similar meanings and refer to the whole law. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **We have not listened to your servants** - Here “not listened” means they did not obey their message. AT: “We have not obeyed the message of your prophets” (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **spoke in your name** - Here “name” refers to God’s authority. AT: “spoke with your authority” or “spoke as your representative” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the people of the land** - Here “land” refers to Israel. AT: “the Israelite people” (UDB)

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 09 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 9:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ Lord, you act justly. However, we are covered in shame. This is true for the people of Judah who live in Jerusalem and who live in other places in Judea. It is also true about your people the Jews, that you scattered to other countries because we were very unfaithful to you. ⁸ Yahweh, we and our kings and our other rulers and our other ancestors are ashamed because we have sinned against you.

ULB:

⁷ To you, Lord, belongs righteousness. To us today, however, belongs shame on our faces—for the people of Judah and those who live in Jerusalem, and to all Israel. This includes those who are near and those who are far away in all the lands where you scattered them. This is because of the great treachery that we committed against you. ⁸ To us, Yahweh, belongs shame on our faces—to our kings, to our leaders, and to our ancestors—because we have sinned against you.

translationWords:

- Lord
- righteous, righteousness
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- Judah
- Jerusalem
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Yahweh
- king
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Daniel continues praying to the Lord about the people of Israel.
- **To you, Lord, belongs righteousness** - Being righteous is spoken of as if “righteousness” were an object that belongs to Yahweh. The abstract noun “righteousness” can be stated as an action. AT: “Lord, you act justly” (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **To us today, however, belongs shame on our faces—for the people** - Being ashamed is spoken of as if “shame” were an object that belongs to people. The abstract noun “shame” can be stated as a verb. AT: “But as for us, we are ashamed of what we have done—the people” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **To us today** - The word “us” includes Daniel and the Israelites, but it does not include God. (See: [Exclusive “We”](#))

- **belongs shame on our faces** - This idiom means their shame is visible to all. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **because of the great treachery that we committed against you** - “because we greatly betrayed you” or “because we were very unfaithful to you” (UDB)

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 09 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 9:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ Although we have rebelled against you, you act mercifully toward us and you are willing to forgive us. ¹⁰ When you gave your laws to your prophets who served you, and they told us to live our lives according to those laws, we did not listen to the voice of Yahweh our God. ¹¹ All Israel has disobeyed your law, and we have turned away from it and have refused to do what you told us to do. Because we have sinned against you, you have sent to us the terrible things that your servant Moses said would happen to us if we sinned against you.

ULB:

⁹ To the Lord our God belong compassion and forgiveness, for we have rebelled against him. ¹⁰ We have not obeyed the voice of Yahweh our God by walking in his laws he gave us through his servants the prophets. ¹¹ All Israel has transgressed your law and turned aside, refusing to obey your voice. The curse and oath that are written in the law of Moses, the servant of God, have been poured out on us, for we have sinned against him.

translationWords:

- Lord
- God
- compassion, compassionate
- forgive, forgiveness
- rebel, rebellious, rebellion
- obey, obedient, obedience
- voice
- Yahweh
- walk
- law, principle
- servant, slave, slavery
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- transgress, transgression
- turn, turn away, turn back
- curse, cursed
- oath, swear, swear by
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Daniel continues praying to the Lord about the people of Israel.
- **To the Lord our God belong compassion and forgiveness** - Having these traits is spoken of as if they belonged to the Lord. AT: “The Lord our God is compassionate and forgives” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **We have not obeyed the voice of Yahweh our God** - Here “voice” refers to the commands that Yahweh spoke. AT: “We have not obeyed what Yahweh told us to do” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **turned aside** - The words “turned aside” mean that Israel stopped obeying God’s laws. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **that are written in the law of Moses** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “that Moses wrote about in the law” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **have been poured out on us** - The abundance of the curse and the oath are spoken of as if they were poured out like water. This can be stated in active form. AT: “you have brought upon us” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 09 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 9:12-14**UDB:**

¹² You warned us and our rulers that you would punish Jerusalem severely by causing a great disaster there, a disaster that would be worse than any disaster that any other city had ever experienced, and you have done what you said that you would do. ¹³ You punished us just as Moses wrote that you would do. But we still have not turned away from our bad deeds to the truth, or begged you for mercy. ¹⁴ So because we did not obey you, Yahweh, you prepared to punish us, and then you did punish us, because you always do what is righteous.

ULB:

¹² Yahweh has confirmed the words that he spoke against us and against our rulers over us, by bringing on us a great disaster. For under the whole of heaven there has not been done anything that could compare with what has been done to Jerusalem. ¹³ As it is written in the law of Moses, all this disaster has come on us, yet we have not begged for mercy from Yahweh our God by turning away from our iniquities and paying attention to your truth. ¹⁴ Therefore Yahweh has kept the disaster ready and has brought it on us, for Yahweh our God is righteous in all the deeds he does, yet we have not obeyed his voice.

translationWords:

- confirm, confirmation
- word
- ruler, rulers, rule
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Jerusalem
- written
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- beg, beggar
- mercy, merciful
- Yahweh
- God
- turn, turn away, turn back
- iniquity
- true, truth, come true
- righteous, righteousness
- works, deeds, work, acts
- obey, obedient, obedience
- voice

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Daniel continues praying to the Lord about the people of Israel.
- **For under the whole of heaven ... what has been done to Jerusalem** - Daniel is exaggerating to show his great sorrow about Jerusalem. Many cities had been totally destroyed. (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **there has not been done anything** - “nothing has been done”
- **what has been done to Jerusalem** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “what you have done to Jerusalem” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **As it is written in the law of Moses** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “As Moses wrote in the law” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **turning away from our iniquities** - Here stopping evil activity is spoken of as turning away from them. AT: “stopping our evil actions” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Yahweh has kept the disaster ready** - “Yahweh has prepared this disaster”
- **we have not obeyed his voice** - Here “voice” refers to the things that Yahweh commanded. AT: “we have not done what he told us to do” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 09 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 9:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Lord our God, you brought your people out of Egypt by your great power, and by doing that you have caused people from that time until the present time to know that you are great even though we have sinned and done wicked things. ¹⁶ But now, because everything you do is righteous, we request you to not be angry with Jerusalem any longer, O Lord. Jerusalem is your city, and your temple was built there on your sacred hill. Now all the people who live in nearby countries despise Jerusalem because of our sins and because of the evil things that our ancestors did.

ULB:

¹⁵ Now, Lord our God, you brought out your people from the land of Egypt with a mighty hand, and you have made a famous name for yourself, as in this present day. But still we sinned; we have done wicked things. ¹⁶ Lord, because of all your righteous deeds, let your anger and your wrath turn away from your city Jerusalem, your holy mountain. Because of our sins, and because of the iniquities of our ancestors, Jerusalem and your people have become an object of scorn to all those around us.

translationWords:

- Lord
- God
- people of God, my people
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- name
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- angry, anger
- wrath, fury
- turn, turn away, turn back
- Jerusalem
- holy, holiness
- iniquity

translationNotes:

- **with a mighty hand** - Here “mighty hand” is a metonym for strength. AT: “with great strength” (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **you have made a famous name for yourself, as in this present day** - “you caused people to know how great you are, as you still do today”
- **still we sinned; we have done wicked things** - These two clauses mean basically the same thing and are used together to emphasize how bad sin is. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **we sinned; we have done wicked things** - Daniel and Israel sinned and did wicked things, but “we” does not include God. (See: [Exclusive “We”](#))
- **your anger and your wrath** - The words “anger” and “wrath” mean basically the same thing and emphasize how terrible God’s anger is when he acts on it. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **your holy mountain** - This mountain may be holy because God’s temple is there. AT: “the mountain where your holy temple is”
- **our sins ... our ancestors** - Here “our” refers to Daniel and Israel, but not to God. (See: [Exclusive “We”](#))
- **an object of scorn** - “a target of disrespect”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 09 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 9:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ Our God, I, your servant, ask you to listen to my prayer and my requests. For your own sake, act kindly toward your sanctuary in Jerusalem, which has been destroyed by the armies of Babylonia.

¹⁸ My God, listen to my prayer. Look at us and do what you must. See, this city that belongs to you is ruined. We are praying to you because you are merciful, not because we have done what is right.

¹⁹ Lord, listen to us! Lord, forgive us! This city and these people belong to you. So I plead with you, my God, to pay attention to what I am saying and act to help us right now, for your own sake!”

ULB:

¹⁷ Now, our God, listen to the prayer of your servant and to his pleas for mercy; for your sake, Lord, make your face shine on your sanctuary that is desolate. ¹⁸ My God, open your ears and listen; open your eyes and see. We have been devastated; look at the city that is called by your name. We do not beg for your help because of our righteousness, but because of your great mercy. ¹⁹ Lord, listen! Lord, forgive! Lord, pay attention and take action! For your own sake, do not delay, my God, for your city and your people are called by your name.”

translationWords:

- God
- pray, prayer
- servant, slave, slavery
- mercy, merciful
- face
- sanctuary
- desolate, desolation
- Lord
- devastate, devastation
- name
- beg, beggar
- righteous, righteousness
- forgive, forgiveness
- people of God, my people

translationNotes:

- **Now** - This does not mean “at this moment”, but it is a way to show that the next phase in Daniel’s prayer is about to start.

- **your servant ... his pleas for mercy** - The words “your servant” and “his” here refer to Daniel. He speaks about himself in the third person as a sign of respect for God. (See [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **pleas for mercy** - “requests for mercy”
- **make your face shine on** - The writer speaks of Yahweh acting favorably as if Yahweh’s face shone a light. AT: “act kindly toward” (UDB) or “act with favor toward” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **your sanctuary** - This refers to the temple in Jerusalem.
- **open your ears and listen** - To “open the ears” is an idiom that means to listen. These two phrases means the same thing and emphasize Daniel’s desire for God to listen to his prayer. AT: “please listen” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))
- **open your eyes and see** - To “open the eyes” is an idiom that means to see. These two phrases means the same thing and emphasize Daniel’s desire for God to pay attention to his prayer. AT: “notice us” or “pay attention” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))
- **is called by your name** - Here “name” represents ownership. AT: “is your city” or “belongs to you” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **do not delay** - This can be stated in positive form. AT: “act quickly”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 09 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 9:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ I continued praying and confessing the sins that I and my people Israel had committed, and pleading with Yahweh my God that he would restore the temple on the sacred hill in Jerusalem. ²¹ While I was praying, Gabriel, the angel whom I had seen in the first vision, came flying rapidly to me at the time in the evening when the priests offered sacrifices.

ULB:

²⁰ While I was speaking—praying and confessing my sin and the sin of my people Israel, and presenting my requests before Yahweh my God on behalf of God’s holy mountain— ²¹ while I was praying, the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the vision at the first, flew down to me in rapid flight, at the time of the evening sacrifice.

translationWords:

- pray, prayer
- confess, confession
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Yahweh
- God
- Gabriel
- vision
- sacrifice, offering

translationNotes:

- **my people Israel** - “the people of Israel to whom I belong”
- **God’s holy mountain** - The mountain may be holy because of the temple. AT: “the mountain where God’s holy temple is” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the man Gabriel** - This is the same angel Gabriel who appeared in the form of a man in [8:16](#). AT: “Gabriel, who appeared as a man” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **in the vision at the first** - This may refer to the first vision that Daniel had while he was awake. AT: “in the previous vision” or “in the vision I saw before” or “in a vision before”
- **flew down to me in rapid flight** - “flew down to me quickly”
- **at the time of the evening sacrifice** - The Jewish people sacrificed to God each evening just before the sun went down.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 09 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 9:22-23**UDB:**

²² He said to me, "Daniel, I have come to you to enable you to understand clearly the message that God gave to Jeremiah. ²³ When you began to plead with God to be merciful to Israel, he gave me a message to give to you. He loves you very much, so he has sent me to tell you what he said to me. So now, pay attention in order that you may understand the meaning of what he revealed to Jeremiah.

ULB:

²² He gave me understanding and said to me, "Daniel, I have now come out to give you insight and understanding. ²³ When you began pleading for mercy, the order was given and I have come to tell you the answer, for you are greatly loved. Therefore consider this word and understand the revelation.

translationWords:

- [Daniel](#)
- [plead, pleading, plea](#)
- [mercy, merciful](#)
- [love](#)
- [word](#)
- [reveal, revelation](#)

translationNotes:

- **insight and understanding** - The words "insight" and "understanding" mean the same thing and emphasize that Gabriel will help Daniel to understand the message completely. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **the order was given** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "God gave the order" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **consider this word** - Here "word" refers to the entire message. AT: "think about this message" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **the revelation** - This refers back to the prophesy of Jeremiah in [9:2](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 09 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 9:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ God has decided that there will be 490 years until he frees your people and city that belongs to him from the guilt of their sins and to atone for the evil things that they have done. Then God will rule everyone justly, and he will do that forever. What you saw in the vision and what Jeremiah prophesied will come true, and the sacred temple will be dedicated to God again.

²⁵ You need to know and understand this: There will be forty-nine years and then 434 years between when a king commands that Jerusalem be rebuilt, and when the leader comes, the one whom God chooses. Then Jerusalem will be rebuilt, and it will have streets and will have a moat around it to protect the city, in spite of the fact it will be a time of great trouble.

ULB:

²⁴ Seventy sevens of years are decreed for your people and your holy city to end the guilt and put an end to sin, to atone for wickedness, to bring everlasting righteousness, to carry out the vision and the prophecy, and to consecrate the most holy place. ²⁵ Know and understand that from the issuing of the order to restore and rebuild Jerusalem to the coming of the anointed one (who will be a leader), there will be seven sevens and sixty-two sevens. Jerusalem will be rebuilt with streets and a moat, despite the times of distress.

translationWords:

- decree
- people of God, my people
- holy, holiness
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- atonement, atone
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- righteous, righteousness
- vision
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- consecrate
- holy place, most holy place
- Jerusalem
- anoint, anointed

translationNotes:

- **Seventy sevens of years ... seven sevens ... and sixty-two sevens** - This is not the normal way the Israelites counted. If possible, try to translate in a way that preserves this use of the number seven. AT: “Seventy times seven years ... seven times seven years ... and sixty-two times seven years”
- **Seventy sevens of years are decreed for your people and your holy city to** - God decreed that he would do the things in this verse for the people and the holy city.
- **your people and your holy city** - The word “your” here refers to Daniel. The people are the Israelites and the holy city is Jerusalem. (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **to end the guilt and put an end to sin** - The idea is repeated to emphasize how certain it is that this will happen. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **to carry out the vision** - Here “carry out” is an idiom that means to accomplish. AT: “to accomplish the vision” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **the vision and the prophecy** - These words in this context mean the same thing. They ensure Daniel that Jeremiah’s vision was indeed a prophecy. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **Know and understand** - These words are used together to make the importance clear. AT: “You must clearly understand” or “You must know for sure” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **the anointed one** - Anointing is a symbolic act to show that someone is chosen. AT: “the person that God anoints” or “the person that God chooses” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))
- **seven sevens ... and sixty-two sevens** - These added together are 69 of the 70 sevens spoken of in verse 24.
- **Jerusalem will be rebuilt** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “People will rebuild Jerusalem” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **moat** - a deep ditch around a city or building, usually with water in it
- **the times of distress** - “a time of great trouble”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 09 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 9:26**UDB:**

²⁶ After those 434 years, the leader whom God has selected will be killed, and everything will be taken away from him. After that, the temple will be destroyed by the army of a powerful ruler. The city and the temple will be destroyed as a flood destroys everything. When this happens, these wars and destruction will cease.

ULB:

²⁶ After the sixty-two sevens of years, the anointed one will be destroyed and will have nothing. The army of a coming ruler will destroy the city and the holy place. Its end will come with a flood, and there will be war even to the end. Desolations have been decreed.

translationWords:

- **anoint, anointed**
- **ruler, rulers, rule**
- **holy place, most holy place**
- **flood**
- **desolate, desolation**
- **decree**

translationNotes:

- **sixty-two sevens of** - This is not the normal way the Israelites counted. If possible, try to translate in a way that preserves this use of the number seven. See how you translated this number in **9:25**. AT: “sixty-two times seven”
- **the anointed one will be destroyed and will have nothing** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “people will destroy the anointed one and he will have nothing” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **the anointed one** - Anointing is a symbolic act to show that someone is chosen. See how you translated this title in **9:25**. AT: “the person that God anoints” or “the person that God chooses”
- **a coming ruler** - This is a foreign ruler, not “the anointed one.” AT: “a foreign ruler who will come” or “a powerful ruler who will come”
- **Its end will come with a flood** - The army will destroy the city and the holy place just as a flood destroys things. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **Desolations have been decreed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God has decreed ruin for the city and sanctuary” or “God has declared that the enemy army will destroy everything” (See: **Active or Passive**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 09 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 9:27**UDB:**

²⁷ That ruler will make a covenant with many people. He will do what he promised for seven years. But when that time is half finished, he will prevent priests from giving any more offerings and sacrifices to God. After this ruler does these disgusting things, someone will pollute the temple by putting an idol in the very holy place. It will stay there until God completely destroys the one who put it there.”

ULB:

²⁷ He will confirm a covenant with many for one seven. In the middle of the seven he will put an end to the sacrifice and the offering. On the wing of abominations will come someone who makes desolate. A full end and destruction are decreed to be poured out on the one who has made the desolation.”

translationWords:

- confirm, confirmation
- covenant
- sacrifice, offering
- abomination, abominable
- desolate, desolation
- decree

translationNotes:

- **He will ... he will** - This refers to the coming ruler who will destroy the anointed one.
- **one seven ... In the middle of the seven** - Here “seven” is used to refer to a period of seven years. AT: “seven years ... Halfway through the seven years”
- **put an end to** - “stop” or “halt”
- **the sacrifice and the offering** - These words basically mean the same thing. The repetition is to show that the ruler will prevent all types of sacrifices. AT: “all forms of sacrificing” or “every type of offering” (See: **Doublet**)
- **the wing of abominations** - This may refer to the defensive structures on top of the walls of the temple, which are called “abominations” because they are full of idols. AT: “the walls of the temple that are full of abominations” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **someone who makes desolate** - “a person who completely destroys”
- **A full end and destruction are decreed to be poured out** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God has decreed that he will pour out a full end and destruction” (See: **Active or Passive** and **Idiom**)

- **A full end and destruction** - These two words or expressions are basically the same. They emphasize how serious and complete the destruction will be. AT: “Complete destruction” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **the one who has made the desolation** - “the person who caused the destruction”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 09 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 09 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a section where Daniel is given a prophecy about the future from an angel. This section continues for the remainder of the book. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Links:

- [Daniel 10:01 Notes](#)

Daniel 10:1

UDB:

¹ During the third year that Cyrus was the king of Persia, a message from God was sent to Daniel (who had been given the name Belteshazzar), and the message was true. It was about a great war, and Daniel understood the message because of what he saw in the vision.

ULB:

10¹ In the third year of Cyrus king of Persia, a message was revealed to Daniel, who was also called Belteshazzar. This message was true. It was about a great war. Daniel understood the message when he had insight from the vision.

translationWords:

- [Cyrus](#)
- [king](#)
- [Persia, Persians](#)
- [word](#)
- [reveal, revelation](#)
- [Daniel](#)
- [true, truth, come true](#)
- [vision](#)

translationNotes:

- **the third year of Cyrus king of Persia** - “year 3 of the rule of Cyrus the king of Persia” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **a message was revealed to Daniel** - This can also be expressed in active form. AT: “God revealed a message to Daniel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **insight** - “understanding”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 10 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 10:2-3**UDB:**

² "At that time I, Daniel, had been sad for three weeks about what had happened to Jerusalem. ³ I did not eat any tasty food or any meat nor did I drink any wine. I did not even put any perfumed oil on my face or hair for those three weeks.

ULB:

² In those days I, Daniel, was in mourning for three weeks. ³ I ate no delicacies, I ate no meat, I drank no wine, and I did not anoint myself with oil until the completion of three entire weeks.

translationWords:

- [mourn, mourning](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)
- [anoint, anointed](#)
- [oil](#)

translationNotes:

- **delicacies** - These are expensive or rare kinds of food. AT: "fancy foods"
- **until the completion of three entire weeks** - "until the end of three entire weeks"

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 10 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 10:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ When those three weeks ended, on the twenty-fourth day of the first month, my companions and I were standing on the bank of the Tigris River. ⁵ I looked up and saw someone there who was wearing fine white clothes and a belt made of pure gold. ⁶ His body shone like a precious beryl stone. His face was as bright as a flash of lightning. His eyes were like flaming torches. His arms and legs shone like gleaming bronze. His voice was very loud like the roar of a huge crowd.

ULB:

⁴ On the twenty-fourth day of the first month, as I was beside the great river (that is, the Tigris), ⁵ I looked up and saw a man dressed in linen, with a belt around his waist made of pure gold from Uphaz. ⁶ His body was like topaz, and his face was like lightning. His eyes were like flaming torches, and his arms and his feet were like polished bronze. The sound of his words was like the sound of a great crowd.

translationWords:

- biblical time: day
- gold
- bronze
- word

translationNotes:

- **On the twenty-fourth day of the first month** - This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The twenty-fourth day is near the middle of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **with a belt around his waist** - “and he was wearing a belt”
- **Uphaz** - Uphaz is a place. Its location is not known (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **His body was like topaz** - His body gleamed with blue or yellow light as if it were made of topaz. AT: “his body gleamed like topaz” (See: [Simile](#))
- **topaz** - a blue or yellow gemstone, also known as beryl, peridot, or chrysolite
- **his face was like lightning** - His face shone brightly as a bolt of lightning shines. AT: “his face shone with light as bright as the flash of lightning” (See: [Simile](#))
- **His eyes were like flaming torches** - His eyes were bright with light as if they were flaming torches. AT: “his eyes were so bright that it seemed they had torches burning inside them” (See: [Simile](#))
- **his arms and his feet were like polished bronze** - His arms and feet were as shiny as if they were made of polished bronze. AT: “his arms and feet shone like polished bronze that reflects the light around it” (See: [Simile](#))

- **The sound of his words was like the sound of a great crowd** - His voice was so loud that it was as if a crowd of people were all talking loudly. AT: “his voice was as loud as a huge crowd all calling out together” (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 10 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 10:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ I, Daniel, was the only one who saw this vision. The men who were with me did not see anything, but they sensed that someone was there, and they became terrified. They ran away and hid themselves. ⁸ So I was left there by myself, looking at this very unusual vision. I had no strength left. My face became very pale, with the result that no one would have recognized me. ⁹ I saw a man there, and when I heard him speak, I fell to the ground. I fainted, and I lay there with my face on the ground.

ULB:

⁷ I, Daniel, alone saw the vision, for the men who were with me did not see the vision. However, a great terror came on them, and they ran away to hide themselves. ⁸ So I was left alone and saw this great vision. No strength remained in me; my bright appearance was turned into a ruined look, and no strength remained in me. ⁹ Then I heard his words—and as I heard them, I fell on my face in deep sleep with my face to the ground.

translationWords:

- vision
- terror, terrify

translationNotes:

- **So I was left alone and saw** - This can be stated in active form. “No one was with me, and I saw” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **my bright appearance was turned into a ruined look** - This can be stated in active form. “my bright appearance turned into looking ruined” (See [Active or Passive](#))
- **my bright appearance** - This describes the face of someone who is healthy. AT: “my healthy-looking face” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **a ruined look** - Someone’s unhealthy, pale face is spoken of as if it were a ruined building. AT: “pale” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I heard his words** - This implies that someone was speaking in the vision. This can be made explicit. AT: “I heard the words of someone who was speaking.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **I fell on my face in deep sleep** - Possible meanings are: 1) Daniel was so scared by what he saw that he deliberately laid on the ground, where he then fainted or 2) Daniel fainted and then fell forward onto the ground. (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 10 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 10:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Suddenly someone's hand took hold of me and lifted me, with the result that I was on my hands and knees, but I was still trembling. ¹¹ The angel said to me, "Daniel, God loves you very much. Stand up and listen to what I am going to say to you because God sent me to you." When he said that, I stood up, but I was still trembling.

ULB:

¹⁰ A hand touched me, and it made me tremble in my knees and the palms of my hands. ¹¹ The angel said to me, "Daniel, man greatly treasured, understand the words that I am speaking to you. Stand upright, for I have been sent to you." When he had spoken this message to me, I stood up trembling.

translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [Daniel](#)
- [love](#)
- [word](#)

translationNotes:

- **A hand touched me** - This implies metonymy, where a person's hand represents that person, probably the man whom Daniel saw in [10:5-6](#). AT: "Someone touched me with his hand" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Daniel, man greatly treasured** - This can also be stated in active form. AT: "Daniel, you whom God greatly treasures" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **greatly treasured** - much valued and loved

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 10 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 10:12-13**UDB:**

¹² Then he said to me, "Daniel, do not be afraid. God has heard what you have prayed ever since the first day that you determined to humble yourself in order to understand the vision. I have come to you because of what you prayed. ¹³ The evil spirit who rules the kingdom of Persia resisted me for twenty-one days, and I had to stay there for that time with the various kings over whom the Persian king was ruling. But Michael, who is one of God's chief angels, came to help me. I left him there in Persia to resist that evil spirit.

ULB:

¹² Then he said to me, "Do not be afraid, Daniel. Since the first day you set your mind to understand and to humble yourself before your God, your words were heard, and I have come because of your words. ¹³ The prince of the kingdom of Persia resisted me, and I was kept there with the kings of Persia for twenty-one days. But Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me.[1]Instead of *kings of Persia* , some ancient copies have *prince of the kings of Persia* .

translationWords:

- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- Daniel
- mind
- humble, humility
- God
- word
- prince, princess
- kingdom
- Persia, Persians
- Michael
- chief
- king

translationNotes:

- **you set your mind to understand** - "you determined to understand the vision"
- **your words were heard** - This can be expressed in active form. AT: "God heard your words" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **prince** - Here this refers to a spirit who has authority over a human nation. AT: "spirit prince"
- **the kings of Persia** - This probably refers to the various kings who ruled over nations in the Persian Empire, and who had to obey the king of Persia.

- **Michael, one of the chief princes** - “Michael, on of the chief angels” or “Michael, one of the archangels”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 10 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 10:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ I have come here to help you understand what will happen to the Israelite people in the future. Do not forget that the vision you saw is about things that will happen in the future, and not about things that will happen very soon.”

¹⁵ While he was still saying that, I looked down at the ground and was unable to say anything.

ULB:

¹⁴ Now I have come to help you understand what will happen to your people in the last days. For the vision is for days yet to come.” ¹⁵ While he was speaking to me using these words, I turned my face toward the ground and was unable to speak.

translationWords:

- [last day, last days, latter days](#)
- [vision](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The angel continues speaking to Daniel.
- **I turned my face toward the ground** - “I looked at the ground.” Daniel may have done this to show humble reverence, or because he was afraid.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 10 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 10:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ Suddenly the angel, who resembled a human, touched my lips. Then I was able to speak, and I said to him, "Sir, because I have seen this vision, I have become very weak, with the result that I cannot stop trembling. ¹⁷ I am only your servant, and am not able to talk to you. I have no strength left, and it is very difficult for me to breathe."

ULB:

¹⁶ One who was like the sons of man touched my lips, and I opened my mouth and spoke to him who stood before me: "My master, I am in agony because of the vision; I have no strength left. ¹⁷ I am your servant. How can I talk with my master? For I now have no strength, and there is no breath left in me."

translationWords:

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [lord, master, sir](#)
- [vision](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [breathe, breath](#)

translationNotes:

- **One who was like the sons of man** - This may refer to the one who had just spoken to Daniel. However, some versions interpret it as referring to a different person. AT: "This one, who looked like a human"
- **like the sons of man** - Here this expression refers to human beings in general. AT: "like a human being" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **agony** - severe emotional suffering
- **I am your servant. How can I talk with my master?** - Daniel asks this question meaning that he cannot speak to the angel because he is not the angel's equal. These sentences can be combined. AT: "I am not able to answer you because I am only your servant" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **there is no breath left in me** - This idiom refers to breathing. AT: "I cannot breathe" or "it's very hard to breathe" (See: [Metonymy](#)).

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)

- Daniel 10 General Notes
- Daniel 10 Translation Questions

Daniel 10:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ But he took hold of me again, and enabled me to become stronger again. ¹⁹ He said to me, “Man, God loves you very much. So do not be afraid. I desire that things will go well for you and that you will be encouraged.” When he had said that, I felt even stronger, and I said, “Sir, tell me what you want to tell me. You have enabled me to feel stronger.”

ULB:

¹⁸ Again the one with an appearance of a man touched me and strengthened me. ¹⁹ He said, “Do not be afraid, man greatly treasured. May peace be to you! Be strong now, be strong!” While he was speaking to me, I was strengthened. I said, “Let my master speak, for you have strengthened me.”

translationWords:

- [love](#)
- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [lord, master, sir](#)

translationNotes:

- **the one with an appearance of a man** - “the one who looked like a human”
- **Be strong now, be strong** - The words “be strong” are repeated for emphasis.
- **man greatly treasured** - This can also be stated in active form. AT: “you whom God greatly treasures” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **I was strengthened** - This can also be stated in active form. AT: “I became strong” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 10 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 10:20-21**UDB:**

20-21 Then he said, “Do you know why I have come to you? It is to reveal to you what is written in the book which reveals God’s truth. But now I must return to fight against the evil spirit who rules the kingdom of Persia. After I have defeated him, the evil angel who guards Greece will appear and I must defeat him. Michael, who guards you Israelite people, will certainly help me, but there is no one else to help me.”

ULB:

²⁰ He said, “Do you know why I have come to you? I will soon return to fight against the prince of Persia. When I go, the prince of Greece will come. ²¹ But I will tell you what is written in The Book of Truth. There is no one who shows himself to be strong with me against them, except Michael your prince.”

translationWords:

- prince, princess
- Persia, Persians
- Greece
- Michael

translationNotes:

- **the prince of Persia** - Here “prince” refers to a spirit who rules and guards a human nation. See how you translated a similar phrase in **10:13**. AT: “the spirit prince of Persia”
- **But I will tell you** - This implies that the angel will tell Daniel about this immediately, before he goes away. AT: “But first I will tell you” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **what is written in The Book of Truth** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “what The Book of Truth says” or “what someone wrote in The Book of Truth” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **who shows himself to be strong** - “who proves himself to be strong”
- **There is no one who shows himself to be strong with me against them, except Michael your prince** - “Michael your prince is the only one to show himself strong with me against them” or “Michael your prince is the only one who helps me against them”
- **Michael your prince** - The word “your” is plural. It refers to Daniel and the rest of the people of Israel. AT: “Michael, the prince of your people” (See: **Forms of You**)
- **Michael your prince** - “Michael your guardian angel.” Translate “prince” when it refers to Michael as you did **10:13**.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 10 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 10 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This final prophecy continues in this chapter. The kings of the north and of the south will fight many wars against each other. The king of the south is probably a reference to Egypt. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Links:

- [Daniel 11:01 Notes](#)

Daniel 11:1-2**UDB:**

¹ In the first year of Darius the Mede, I myself came to help and encourage Michael.

² What I am going to reveal to you now will truly happen. There will be three more kings to rule Persia, one after the other. Then there will be a fourth king, who will be much richer than the others. He will gain his power through money. Then he will incite everyone to fight against the kingdom of Greece.

ULB:

11 ¹ In the first year of Darius the Mede, I myself came to support and protect Michael. ² Now I will tell you the truth. Three kings will arise in Persia, and a fourth will be far richer than all the others. When he has gained power through his riches, he will stir up everyone against the kingdom of Greece.

translationWords:

- Darius
- Medes, Media
- angel, archangel
- reveal, revelation
- true, truth, come true
- king
- Persia, Persians
- power, powers
- kingdom
- Greece

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In Daniel 11:1 through 12:4, the one who was speaking to Daniel in chapter 10 tells him what is written in the book of truth. This is as he said he would do in [10:21](#).
- **In the first year of Darius** - Darius was the King of the Medes. “The first year” refers to the first year that he was king. AT: “In the first year of the reign of Darius” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **Three kings will arise in Persia** - “Three kings will rule over Persia”
- **a fourth will be far richer than all the others** - “after them a fourth king will come into power who will have more money than the three before him” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

- **power** - Possible meanings are 1) authority or 2) military power.
- **he will stir up everyone** - “he will cause everyone to want to fight”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 11:3-4**UDB:**

³ Then a very powerful king will rise up. He will rule over a very large empire, and he will do everything he wants to do. ⁴ But when he has become very powerful, his kingdom will be divided into four parts. Kings who are not his descendants will rule, but they will not be as powerful as he was. His kingdom will be torn up and given to others.

ULB:

³ A mighty king will rise up who will rule a very great kingdom, and he will act according to his desires. ⁴ When he has risen up, his kingdom will be broken and divided to the four winds of heaven, but not to his own descendants, and not with his power when he had been ruling. For his kingdom will be uprooted for others besides his descendants.

translationWords:

- king
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- kingdom
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- descendant, descended from
- power, powers

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The angel continues speaking to Daniel.
- **A mighty king will rise up** - The idea of rising up or standing is often used for someone who becomes powerful. AT: “A mighty king will begin to reign” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **who will rule a very great kingdom** - Possible meanings are 1) that the size of this kingdom would be very great, or 2) that the king would rule his kingdom with very great power.
- **his kingdom will be broken and divided** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “his kingdom will break apart and divide” or “his kingdom will break apart into pieces” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the four winds of heaven** - Translate this as in [7:2](#).
- **but not to his own descendants** - The idea of not being divided and shared out is implied here. AT: “but it will not be divided for his own descendants” or “but it will not be shared by his own descendants” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **his kingdom will be uprooted for others besides his descendants** - The kingdom is spoken of as if it were a plant that someone destroyed by uprooting it. This idea can be expressed

in active form. AT: “another power will uproot and destroy his kingdom and others who are not his descendants will rule over it” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 11:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ Then the king of the South will become very powerful. But one of his army generals will become more powerful than he is and will also become a powerful ruler. ⁶ At the right time, they will make an agreement. The daughter of the king of the South will come to the king of the North to make the agreement secure. But she will lose her power and will come to nothing—she and all who accompanied her, and her father, as well as the king of the North and his children.

ULB:

⁵ The king of the South will become strong, but one of his commanders will become even stronger than he and will rule his kingdom with great power. ⁶ After a few years, when the time is right, they will make an alliance. The daughter of the king of the South will come to the king of the North to confirm the agreement. But she will not keep her arm's strength, nor will he stand, or his arm. She will be abandoned—she and those who brought her, and her father, and the one who supported her in those times.[1]Instead of *his arm*, which the Hebrew text has, some ancient and many modern versions read *his seed*, that is, *his children*.

translationWords:

- king
- commander, command
- kingdom

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The angel continues speaking to Daniel.
- **one of his commanders will become even stronger than he and will rule his kingdom with great power** - A commander of the king of the South will become the king of the North.
- **they will make an alliance** - The king of the South will make an alliance with the king of the North. This alliance would be a formal agreement that both nations are required to follow. AT: “the king of the South and the king of the North will promise to work together.”
- **The daughter of the king of the South will come ... to confirm the agreement** - The king of the South will give his daughter in marriage to the king of the North. The marriage will confirm the agreement between the two kings.
- **her arm's strength ... his arm** - Here “arm” stands for power. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **She will be abandoned** - This appears to refer to a plot to kill her and those who made the alliance. This phrase may be expressed in active form. AT: “They will abandon her” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 11:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ Soon after that, one of her relatives will take power in her place, and his army will attack the army of the king of the North. They will enter the fortress of the soldiers and defeat them. ⁸ They will carry off their idols and gods to Egypt, and they will take their statues (made by casting metal into a form) and many items made of silver and gold. Then for several years his army will not attack the army of the king of the North. ⁹ Then the army of the king of the North will invade the kingdom of the king of the South, but he will then return to his own land.

ULB:

⁷ But a branch from her roots will rise up in her place. He will attack the army and enter the fortress of the king of the North. He will fight them, and he will conquer them. ⁸ He will carry off to Egypt their gods along with their cast metal figures and their precious vessels of silver and of gold. For some years he will stay away from the king of the North. ⁹ Then the king of the North will invade the realm of the king of the South, but he will withdraw to his own land.

translationWords:

- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- stronghold, fortress, fortified
- king
- Egypt, Egyptian
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure
- silver
- gold

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The angel continues speaking to Daniel.
- **a branch from her roots** - This family is spoken of as if it were a tree. The roots represent ancestors, and the branch represents a descendant. AT: “a descendant of her ancestors” or “one of her descendants” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **her roots** - The word “her” refers to the daughter of the king of the South in [11:6](#).
- **He will attack the army** - The word “he” refers to her descendant, and here it also refers to his army. AT: “He and his army will attack the army of the king of the North” (See [Synecdoche](#))
- **He will fight them** - Here “them” represents the soldiers of the enemy army. AT: “He will fight the enemy soldiers”
- **but he will withdraw** - The word “he” refers to the king of the North.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 11:10**UDB:**

¹⁰ However, his sons will prepare to start a war, and they will gather a large army. That army will march south and spread all over Israel like a huge flood. They will attack a strong fortress in the south of Israel.

ULB:

¹⁰ His sons will get ready and assemble a great army. It will keep coming and will flood everything; it will pass through all the way to his fortress.

translationWords:

- [flood](#)
- [stronghold, fortress, fortified](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The angel continues speaking to Daniel.
- **His sons** - “The sons of the king of the North”
- **assemble a great army** - “gather together many men who can fight in battles”
- **will flood everything** - The way the large army covers the land will be like a flood of water. AT: “will be so great in number that they will cover all the land” (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 11:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ Then the king of the South, having become very angry, will march with his army north and fight against a great army. The king of the North will gather together a very large army, but the army of the king of the South will defeat them. ¹² The king of the South will become very proud because his army will defeat a very large number of soldiers and will kill many of his enemies. But he will not succeed.

ULB:

¹¹ Then the king of the South will become very angry; he will go and fight against him, the king of the North. The king of the North will raise up a great army, but the army will be given into his hand. ¹² The army will be carried off, and the heart of the king of the South will be lifted up, and he will make tens of thousands to fall, but he will not be victorious.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [proud, pride, prideful](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The angel continues speaking to Daniel.
- **will raise up a great army** - “will assemble a great army”
- **the army will be given into his hand** - Here “hand” represents the control of the king of the South. AT: “the king will surrender the army to the king of the South” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **The army will be carried off** - This may be expressed in active form. AT: “The king of the South will capture the army of the North” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **will be lifted up** - Being lifted up represents the idea of becoming very proud. AT: “will become very proud” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **will make tens of thousands to fall** - Here falling represents dying in battle. AT: “will have his army kill many thousands of his enemies” or “will kill many thousands of his enemies” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **tens of thousands** - “many thousands” (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)

- Daniel 11 General Notes
- Daniel 11 Translation Questions

Daniel 11:13**UDB:**

¹³ The king of the North will again gather together an army that will be bigger than the one that he had before. After a few years, the king of the North will come again with a large army and a lot of equipment for fighting battles.

ULB:

¹³ Then the king of the North will raise up another army, greater than the first. After some years, the king of the North will surely come with a great army supplied with much equipment.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [raise, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The angel continues speaking to Daniel.
- **a great army supplied with much equipment** - This can also be stated in active form. AT: “a great army that has much equipment” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 11:14**UDB:**

¹⁴ At that time, many will rebel against the king of the South. In order to fulfill a certain vision, some violent people from your country of Israel will also rebel against him, but they will not succeed.

ULB:

¹⁴ In those times many will rise against the king of the South. Sons of the violent among your people will set themselves in order to fulfill a vision, but they will stumble.

translationWords:

- [raise, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [king](#)
- [fulfill](#)
- [vision](#)
- [stumble](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The angel continues speaking to Daniel.
- **many will rise against the king** - Here the idea of rising up represents rebelling. AT: “many people will rebel against the king” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Sons of the violent** - This expression stands for violent people. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **they will stumble** - Here stumbling represents failing. AT: “they will not succeed” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 11:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Then the king of the North will come with his army and pile up earth against the walls of a city that is well protected, and they will break through those walls and will capture the city. The soldiers from the South who have come to defend that city, even the best troops, will not be strong enough to continue to fight. ¹⁶ So the king of the North will do whatever he wants against the king of the South, and no one will be able to oppose him. He will occupy the glorious land of Israel and will have the power to destroy it.

ULB:

¹⁵ The king of the North will come, pour out earth for siege mounds, and capture a city with fortifications. The forces of the South will not be able to stand, not even their best soldiers. There will be no strength to stand. ¹⁶ Instead, the one who comes will act according to his desires against him; no one will stand in his way. He will stand in the land of beauty, and destruction will be in his hand.

translationWords:

- king
- hand, right hand, to hand over

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The angel continues speaking to Daniel.
- **The king of the North will ... pour out earth** - “The king of the North” here stands for the soldiers in the king’s army, who would do the actual work of making siege mounds. AT: “The soldiers of the king of the North will pour out earth to make siege mounds” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **The king of the North will come** - Here “king of the North” includes his army also. AT: “The army of the king of the North will come” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **pour out earth for siege mounds** - This refers to the piling up of earth in order for soldiers to reach the height of city walls in order to attack them. Soldiers and slaves would put loose earth in baskets, carry them to the right place, and pour it out in order to raise the mounds.
- **fortifications** - walls and other things built to defend a city or fort from enemy soldiers
- **will not be able to stand** - Here standing represents the ability to fight. AT: “will not be able to keep fighting against them” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **the one who comes will act according to his desires against him** - “the invading king will do whatever he wants against the other king”
- **He will stand in** - Here standing represents ruling. AT: “The king will begin to rule” (See: **Metonymy**)

- **the land of beauty** - This refers to the land of Israel. See how you translated this in [08:09](#).
- **destruction will be in his hand** - Here “destruction” represents the power to destroy. Also, the power to destroy is spoken of as if it were something that someone could hold in his hand. AT: “he will have power to destroy anything” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 11:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ Then the king of the North will decide to march south with all the soldiers from his kingdom. He will make an alliance with the king of the South and in order that his daughter will help him to destroy the kingdom of the South, he will give her to the king of the South to become his wife. But that plan will fail. ¹⁸ After that, the army of the king of the North will attack the regions that are close to the Mediterranean Sea, and his army will conquer many of them. But the army of a leader from another country will defeat him and will stop him from being proud. He will also turn his pride against him. ¹⁹ Then the king of the North will return to the fortresses in his own land. But he will be defeated, and no one will be able to find him.

ULB:

¹⁷ The king of the North will set his face to come with the strength of his entire kingdom, and with him will be an agreement that he will make with the king of the South. He will give him a daughter of women in marriage to ruin the kingdom of the South. But the plan will not succeed or help him. ¹⁸ After this, the king of the North will pay attention to the coastlands and will capture many of them. But a commander will end his arrogance and will cause his arrogance to turn back upon him. ¹⁹ Then he will pay attention to the fortresses of his own land, but he will stumble and fall; he will not be found.

translationWords:

- king
- kingdom
- just, justice, justly
- commander, command
- turn, turn away, turn back
- stronghold, fortress, fortified
- stumble

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The angel continues speaking to Daniel.
- **set his face** - “decide” (See: **Idiom**)
- **come with the strength of his entire kingdom** - This probably refers to military power. AT: “come with the force of all his army” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **a daughter of women** - This is an elegant way of saying “a woman.” (See: **Idiom**)
- **will end his arrogance** - “will make the king of the North stop being arrogant”

- **will cause his arrogance to turn back upon him** - “will cause the king of the North to suffer because he was arrogant toward others”
- **he will pay attention** - “the king of the North will pay attention”
- **he will not be found** - This is a way of saying that he will die. This idea can be stated in active form. AT: “he will disappear” or “he will die” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 11:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ Then another man will succeed him. He is one who will force taxes upon the people to supply the beauty of the palace, but that king will die after a short time. However, he will not die as a result of people being angry with him or in a battle.

²¹ The next king will be an evil man who is hated because he is not the son of the previous king, and he will not have the right to become king. But he will come in without any objection when people do not expect it, and he will become king by tricking the people. ²² When his army advances, they will attack any armies that oppose him and their enemies will be swept away before them like a flood. Their enemies and the head of the priests will be swept away.

ULB:

²⁰ Then someone will rise up in his place who will make a tax collector pass through for the sake of the splendor of the kingdom. But in the next days he will be broken, but not in anger or in battle.

²¹ In his place will rise up a despised person to whom the people will not have given the honor of royal power; he will come unexpectedly and will take over the kingdom by trickery. ²² An army will be swept away like a flood from before him. Both that army and the leader of the covenant will be destroyed.

translationWords:

- tax, taxes
- splendor
- kingdom
- honor, to honor
- flood
- covenant

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The angel continues speaking to Daniel.
- **someone will rise up in his place** - Rising up in a king's place represents becoming king in place of the previous king. AT: "another man will become king of the North instead of that king" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **will make a tax collector pass through** - The tax collector will go through the land forcing people to pay taxes. AT: "will send someone to make the people pay taxes" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **he will be broken** - Here "he" refers to the new king. Being broken represents dying. AT: "the new king will die" (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **but not in anger** - Possible meanings are 1) no one was angry at the king, or 2) that the occasion and cause of the king's death were kept secret. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **a despised person to whom the people will not have given the honor of royal power** - The people will refuse to acknowledge him as king because he is not a descendant of kings. AT: "a person whom the people will despise and will not honor as king" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **An army will be swept away like a flood from before him** - Being swept away represents being destroyed. This can be stated in active form. AT: "His army will completely destroy a great army as a flood destroys everything in its path" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Simile](#)).
- **Both that army and the leader of the covenant will be destroyed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "He will destroy that army and the leader of the covenant" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the leader of the covenant** - This phrase refers to the person who filled the most important religious position that God required in his covenant, that of the high priest. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 11:23-24

UDB:

²³ By making treaties with the rulers of other nations, he will deceive them, and he will become very powerful, even though he rules a nation that does not have a lot of people. ²⁴ Suddenly his army will invade a province that is very wealthy, and they will do things that none of his ancestors did: they will capture in battles all kinds of possessions from the people whom they defeat. Then the king will divide those possessions among his friends. He will also plan for his army to attack fortresses, but only for a short time.

ULB:

²³ From the time an alliance is made with him, he will act deceitfully; with only a small number of people he will become strong. ²⁴ Without warning he will come into the richest part of the province, and he will do what neither his father nor his father's father did. He will spread among his followers the booty, the plunder, and the wealth. He will plan the overthrow of fortresses, but only for a time.

translationWords:

- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- province, provincial
- stronghold, fortress, fortified

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** The angel continues speaking to Daniel.
- **From the time an alliance is made with him** - This can also be stated in active form. AT: "When other rulers make a peace treaty with him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **will spread among his followers** - "will distribute to his followers"
- **the booty, the plunder, and the wealth** - "the valuable things that he and his army take from the people they defeat"

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 11:25-27**UDB:**

²⁵ The king of the North will gather a large and powerful army to attack the army of the king of the South. The king of the South will meet him in battle with a huge and powerful army. However, he will fail, and his plan will not succeed because of all the plots that are devised against him. ²⁶ Even the most trusted advisors of the king of the South will plan to get rid of him. His army will be defeated and many of his soldiers will be killed. ²⁷ Then the two kings who both want to rule that area will sit down at the same table and talk together, but they will both lie to each other. Neither of them will get what he wants because only God will cause the result of their actions to happen, at the future time that he has determined.

ULB:

²⁵ He will wake up his power and his heart against the king of the South with a great army. The king of the South will wage war with a large, very powerful army, but he will not stand because others will make plots against him. ²⁶ Even those who eat his fine food will try to destroy him. His army will be swept away like a flood, and many of them will fall killed. ²⁷ Both these kings, with their hearts set on evil against each other, will sit at the same table and lie to each other, but it will be of no use. For the end will come at the time that has been fixed.

translationWords:

- power, powers
- king
- flood
- heart
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** The angel continues speaking to Daniel.
- **He will wake up his power and his heart** - Power and heart (that is, courage) are spoken of as if they were people whom someone could wake up in order to make them act. AT: “He will make himself powerful and will become courageous” (See: **Personification**)
- **heart** - Here this represents courage. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **with a great army** - “with a great army that he will assemble”
- **will wage war** - “will fight against him”
- **he will not stand** - Not standing represents being defeated. AT: “the king of the South will be defeated” or “his army will be defeated” (See: **Metaphor**)

- **those who eat his fine food** - This refers to the king's advisers. It was usual for a king's most trusted advisers to eat meals with him. AT: "the king's best advisers" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **His army will be swept away like a flood** - Here the severe defeat of an army is spoken of as a flood of water that completely sweeps it away. AT: "The enemy will completely defeat his army" or "His enemy will completely destroy his army as a flood destroys everything in its path" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **many of them will fall killed** - Here "fall" is an idiom that refers to dying in battle, so "fall" and "killed" mean basically the same thing. AT: "many of his soldiers will die in battle" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))
- **with their hearts set on evil against each other** - Here "heart" represents a person's desires. Desires are spoken of here as if they were an object that someone could set or place in a certain position. AT: "each determined to do evil to the other" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **will sit at the same table** - Sitting at the same table represents the act of talking to each other. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **but it will be of no use** - "but their talking will not help them"
- **For the end will come at the time that has been fixed** - This tells why their meetings will not be successful. AT: "The result of their actions will only come at the time that God has fixed" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 11:28**UDB:**

²⁸ The army of the king of the North will return to its land, taking with them all the valuable things that they have captured. The king will try to make the people stop obeying God's covenant with them. He will do what he wants to in Israel, and then he will return to his own country.

ULB:

²⁸ Then the king of the North will go back into his land with great riches, with his heart set against the holy covenant. He will act and then will return to his own land.

translationWords:

- [heart](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [covenant](#)

translationNotes:

- **riches, with his heart set against the holy covenant** - This refers to the king's desire to oppose God's covenant in Israel. This may be stated in active form. AT: "riches. He will be determined to oppose the holy covenant" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **his heart** - This refers to the king's desires. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **set against the holy covenant** - The king's desire to act against the holy covenant represents his desire to stop the Israelites from obeying that covenant. AT: "to stop the Israelites from obeying the holy covenant" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the holy covenant** - Here "holy" describes God's covenant with Israel. It implies that the covenant should be honored and obeyed because it comes from God himself. AT: "God's covenant, which all the Israelites should obey"
- **He will act** - This implies that the king will do certain actions in Israel. AT: "He will do what he wants to in Israel" (UDB) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 11:29-30

UDB:

²⁹ When it is the time that God has decided, the king of the North will invade the South again. But this time he will not be successful as he was before. ³⁰ Ships will come from Kittim and oppose his army and cause him to be afraid. So he will be very angry, and with his army he will return to Israel and seek to destroy the worship and the law. The king will show preference and favor to those who have abandoned God's holy covenant with Israel.

ULB:

²⁹ At the appointed time he will return and come against the South again. But this time it will not be as before. ³⁰ For ships of Kittim will come against him, and he will become afraid and will turn back. He will be furious against the holy covenant, and he will show favor to those who forsake the holy covenant.

translationWords:

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, forsook](#)

translationNotes:

- **ships of Kittim will come against him** - The ships represent the army coming in those ships. AT: ""an army will come from Kittim in ships in order to fight his army"" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Kittim** - This may refer to a settlement on the island of Cyprus in the Mediterranean Sea. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **He will be furious** - "He will become very angry"
- **will show favor to those** - "will act in favor for those" or "will help those"

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 11:31-32**UDB:**

³¹ Some of his soldiers will do things to defile the temple. They will prevent the priests from offering sacrifices each day, and they will put in the temple something disgusting that will make it like a wilderness.

³² By deceiving those who have abandoned God's covenant with Israel, he will win them over to become his supporters. But those who are devoted to their God will firmly oppose them.

ULB:

³¹ His forces will rise up and profane the fortress sanctuary. They will take away the regular burnt offering, and they will set up the abomination that causes desolation. ³² As for those who acted wickedly against the covenant, he will deceive them and corrupt them. But the people who know their God will be strong and will take action.

translationWords:

- profane
- sanctuary
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- abomination, abominable
- covenant
- know, knowledge, make known
- God

translationNotes:

- **His forces will rise up** - "His army will appear" or "His army will come." The word "His" refers to the king of the North. (See: **Idiom**)
- **the fortress sanctuary** - "the sanctuary that the people use as a fortress"
- **They will take away the regular burnt offering** - Taking away the offering represents preventing people from offering it. AT: "They will stop the priests from presenting the regular burnt offering" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **the abomination that causes desolation** - This refers to an idol that will make the temple desolate, that is, that will cause God to leave his temple. AT: "the disgusting idol that will cause God to abandon the temple" or "the disgusting thing that will make the temple unclean" (See: **Idiom**)
- **acted wickedly against the covenant** - "wickedly disobeyed the covenant"
- **corrupt them** - "persuade them to do evil"

- **who know their God** - Here “know” means “be faithful.” AT: “who are faithful to their God” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **will be strong and will take action** - “will be firm and resist them”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 11:33-35**UDB:**

³³ The wise among the leaders of Israel will teach others also. But for a while, they will be killed in battles, or burned to death, or made slaves, or robbed.

³⁴ While God's people are being persecuted, some people will help them a little, although some of those who help them will not do it for good reasons. ³⁵ After some of those wise leaders suffer these things, God will make his people become the best possible people for himself. Also, God has set a time in the future when he will finish doing all these things.

ULB:

³³ The wise among the people will make many understand. But they will stumble by the sword and by flame; they will stumble into captivity and into being robbed for days. ³⁴ In their stumbling, they will be helped with a little help. In hypocrisy many will join themselves with them. ³⁵ Some of the wise will stumble so that refining will happen to them, and cleansing, and purifying, until the time of the end. For the appointed time is still to come.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- sword
- possess, possession
- stumble
- clean, cleanse
- pure, purify, purification
- appoint, appointed

translationNotes:

- **they will stumble** - Here "stumble" represents experiencing a disaster of one kind or another, including death itself. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **they** - This refers to the wise persons among the Israelites.
- **the sword** - Here "sword" represents battles and warfare. AT: "they will die in battle." (See: **Metonymy**)
- **and by flame** - Here "flame" represents fire. AT: "and by burning to death" (See: **Metonymy**)
- **into captivity** - "into being made slaves"
- **into being robbed** - This can be put into active form. AT: "their enemies will rob them of their possessions" (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **they will be helped with a little help** - This may be put into active form. AT: "others will give them a little help" (See: **Active or Passive**)

- **In hypocrisy many will join themselves with them** - This refers to other people who will pretend to help the wise persons, but not because they truly wish to help them.
- **will join themselves** - Here “join themselves” represents “come to help.” AT: “will come to help them” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Some of the wise will stumble** - Here “stumble” represents experiencing a disaster of one kind or another, including death itself. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **so that refining will happen to them** - Here “so that” means “with the result that.” AT: “with the result that refining will happen to them”
- **refining will happen to them, and cleansing, and purifying** - These three activities are expressed here as if they were things. However, they may be expressed as actions, either in passive form or in active form. AT: “they will be refined, cleansed, and purified” or “their suffering will refine, cleanse, and purify them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **Some of the wise will stumble ... until the time of the end** - This suffering will continue until the time when God has decided that it will end.
- **refining** - This refers to the purifying of metal by melting it in a fire. When God makes his people more faithful to himself, this is spoken of as if they were metal that a worker was making more pure by putting it into fire. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **cleansing** - This refers to making people, places, or objects suitable for God’s use by separating them from sin and other forms of evil. It speaks of evil as if it were physical dirtiness that could be removed by washing. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **purifying** - This idea is very similar to refining, discussed earlier. Metal that is refined can also be said to be purified. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **time of the end** - “the final days” or “the end of the world.” See how you translated this in [8:17](#).
- **the appointed time is still to come** - Here “appointed time” implies that God has set the time. This can be put into active form. AT: “Yahweh has set the time in the future”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 11:36-37**UDB:**

³⁶ The king will do what he wants. He will boast and say that he is greater than any god. He will even insult the most high God. He will be able to do what he wants until the time when God is ready to show that he is angry with him, for what God has ordered will happen. ³⁷ The king will ignore the gods that his ancestors worshiped and the god that women love. He will ignore every god because he will pretend to be greater than any of them.

ULB:

³⁶ The king will act according to his desires. He will lift himself up and make himself great above every god. Against the God of gods he will say astonishing things, for he will succeed until the wrath is completed. For what has been decreed will be done. ³⁷ He will pay no attention to the gods of his ancestors or to the god desirable to women. Neither will he will pay attention to any other god. For all above every one he will make himself great.

translationWords:

- king
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished
- God
- wrath, fury
- decree
- proud, pride, prideful

translationNotes:

- **The king will act according to his desires** - “the king will do whatever he wants”
- **The king** - This refers to the king of the North.
- **lift himself up and make himself great** - The phrases “lift himself up” and “make himself great” mean the same thing and indicate that the king will become very proud. (See: **Doublet**)
- **lift himself up** - Here this represents becoming very proud. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **make himself great** - Here this represents pretending to be very important and powerful. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **astonishing things** - “terrible things” or “shocking things”
- **until the wrath is completed** - This phrase pictures God as storing up his wrath until his storeroom is completely full of it and he is ready to act according to it. AT: “until God is completely angry with him” or “until God is angry enough to take action against him” (See: **Metaphor**)

- **the God of gods** - This refers to the one true God. AT: “the supreme God” or “the only true God” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **the god desirable to women** - This seems to refer to the pagan god named Tammuz.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 11:38-39**UDB:**

³⁸ But he will honor the god of fortresses. That is a god whom his ancestors did not honor. He will give gold and silver, jewels and other expensive gifts to that god. ³⁹ He will employ people from another country who worship a different god to help him attack the strongest fortresses. He will greatly honor those who allow him to be their ruler. He will appoint some of them to important positions in the government, and he will reward them by dividing up the land among them.

ULB:

³⁸ He will honor the god of fortresses instead of these. It is a god whom his fathers did not acknowledge that he will honor with gold and silver, with precious stones and valuable gifts. ³⁹ He will attack the strongest fortresses with the help of a foreign god. To anyone who acknowledges him, he will give much honor. He will make them rulers over many people, and he will divide up the land as a reward.[1]Instead of *He will attack the strongest fortresses* , some modern versions have *He will defend his fortress* .

translationWords:

- honor, to honor
- stronghold, fortress, fortified
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- gold
- silver
- precious
- acknowledge
- ruler, rulers, rule

translationNotes:

- **the god of fortresses** - The king probably believed that this false god would help him to attack other people's fortresses and keep his own. AT: "the god that controls fortresses"
- **instead of these** - The word "these" refers to the gods mentioned in [11:37](#)
- **he will divide up the land as a reward** - Possible meanings are 1) "he will give the land to his followers as a reward" or 2) "he will sell land to his followers"

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 11 General Notes](#)

- Daniel 11 Translation Questions

Daniel 11:40-41**UDB:**

⁴⁰ But when his time to rule is almost ended, the army of the king of the South will come, but the king of the North will attack first. The army will fight, moving against its enemies like a flood, and they will attack with many ships. ⁴¹ They will invade the glorious land of Israel and many will fall, but the people of Edom, Moab, and the people of Ammon who survive will escape alive.

ULB:

⁴⁰ At the time of the end the king of the South will attack. The king of the North will storm against him with chariots and horsemen, and with many ships. He will go against lands, flood them, and pass through. ⁴¹ He will go into the land of beauty, and tens of thousands of Israelites will fall. But these will escape from his hand: Edom, Moab, and the remainder of the people of Ammon.

translationWords:

- king
- chariot
- horsemen
- sweep, swept
- flood
- glory, glorious
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- Moab, Moabite, Moabites
- Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonites

translationNotes:

- **time of the end** - “the final days” or “the end of the world.” See how you translated this in [8:17](#).
- **the king of the South ... The king of the North** - These phrases stand for the kings and their armies. AT: “the king of the South and his army ... The king of the North and his army” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **will storm against him** - Violently attacking with an army is spoken of as if a storm happened. AT: “will attack him like a violent storm” or “will violently attack him” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **flood them** - When an army overruns a country, it is spoken of as if a flood occurred. See how you translated this in [11:10](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **pass through** - Nothing will stop the army. AT: “will pass through the lands with no one to stop him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

- **the land of beauty** - This refers to the land of Israel. See how you translated this in [08:09](#) and [11:16](#).
- **will fall** - Here falling represents the action of dying. AT: “will die” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **But these will escape from his hand** - Here “hand” represents power. AT: “But these will escape from his power” or “But he will not be able to destroy these nations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 11:42-43**UDB:**

⁴² He will invade other countries and conquer them. He will also defeat the people of Egypt. ⁴³ The army of the North will take away the treasuries of gold and silver, and the riches of Egypt. The Libyans and the Ethiopians will serve the king of the North.

ULB:

⁴² He will extend his hand into lands; the land of Egypt will not be rescued. ⁴³ He will have control over the treasures of gold and of silver, and over all the riches of Egypt; the Libyans and the Ethiopians will be in his footsteps.

translationWords:

- [power, powers](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [gold](#)
- [silver](#)
- [Ethiopia, Ethiopian](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is still about the king of the North.
- **He will extend his hand into lands** - Here “hand” represents power and control. AT: “He will extend his control over various lands” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **into lands** - Here the idea is many lands or various lands. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the land of Egypt will not be rescued** - This can be put into active form. AT: “the land of Egypt will not escape” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the Libyans and the Ethiopians will be in his footsteps** - Here “footsteps” represent submission. AT: “the Libyans and the Ethiopians will have to serve him” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **the Libyans and the Ethiopians** - “the people of Libya and Ethiopia.” Libya is a country west of Egypt, and Ethiopia is a country south of Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 11:44-45**UDB:**

⁴⁴ But he will become very frightened when he hears reports about what is happening in the east and in the north. So he will become very angry and will send his army to fight furiously and to kill many of their enemies. ⁴⁵ The king will set up his royal tents in the area between the Mediterranean Sea and the hill in Jerusalem, the location of the temple. But someone will kill him there, and there will be no one to help him.”

ULB:

⁴⁴ But news from the east and the north will frighten him, and he will go out with great rage to completely destroy and to set many apart for destruction. ⁴⁵ He will set up the tent of his royal residence between the seas and the mountain of the beauty of holiness. He will come to his end, and there will be no helper for him.

translationWords:

- report
- alarm, alarmed
- tent
- holy, holiness

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is still about the king of the North.
- **he will go out with great rage** - The abstract noun “rage” can be expressed with the word “angry.” It can be stated clearly that he would go out with his army. AT: “he will be very angry and will go out” or “he will become very angry and will go out with his army” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **go out** - Here this represents the action of attacking the enemy. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **to set many apart for destruction** - “to destroy many people”
- **the tent of his royal residence** - This refers to the king’s luxurious tents that he lived in when he was with his army in time of war.
- **between the seas and the mountain of the beauty of holiness** - This probably refers to the region between the Mediterranean Sea and Temple Mount in Jerusalem.
- **the mountain of the beauty of holiness** - This refers to the hill in Jerusalem where God’s temple was. See how you translated somewhat similar phrases in [9:16](#) and [9:20](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 11 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 11 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The final prophecy concludes in this chapter. It tells about the future resurrection of the dead and the final judgment. (See: [resurrection](#) and [judgment day](#))

Links:

- [Daniel 12:01 Notes](#)

Daniel 12:1-2**UDB:**

¹ The angel also said to me, "After those things happen, the great angel Michael, who protects the Israelite people, will appear. Then there will be a time when there will be great troubles. The troubles will be greater than any troubles since any nation began. At that time, all of your people whose names have been written in the book will be saved. ² Many of those who have died will become alive again. Some of them will live in everlasting life, and some in shame and everlasting contempt.

ULB:

12 ¹ "At that time Michael, the great prince who guards your people, will rise up. There will be a time of trouble such as never was since the beginning of any nation until that time. At that time your people will be saved, everyone whose name is found written in the book. ² Many of those who sleep in the dust of the earth will rise up, some to everlasting life and some to shame and everlasting contempt.

translationWords:

- time
- Michael
- prince, princess
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- trouble, troubles, troubled
- nation
- save, safe
- sleep, asleep, fall asleep
- earth, earthly
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- life, live, living, alive
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- contempt, contemptible

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The angel who appeared to Daniel in **10:5** continues speaking.
- **Michael, the great prince** - Michael is an archangel. Here he is also given the title "great prince."
- **Michael ... will rise up** - Here "rise up" is an idiom that means to appear. AT: "Michael ... will appear" (See: **Idiom**)

- **your people will be saved** - This can be stated in active form. You can also make it clear that God will save the people. AT: “God will save your people” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **whose name is found written in the book** - This can be stated in active form. You can also make it clear that God writes names in the book. AT: “whose name God has written in the book” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **those who sleep in the dust of the earth will rise up** - The phrase “sleep in the dust of the earth” is another way of referring to those who have died. Here “rise up” is an idiom that means to come back to life. AT: “those who have died will come back to life” (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 12 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 12:3-4**UDB:**

³ Those who were wise will shine as brightly as the sky. Those who have shown to others the way to live righteously will shine forever like the stars. ⁴ But as for you, Daniel, close up the scroll in which you are writing and seal it until the time of the end. Before that happens, many people will travel here and there, learning more and more about many things.”

ULB:

³ Those who are wise will shine like the brightness of the sky above, and those who turn many to righteousness, are like the stars forever and ever. ⁴ But you, Daniel, close up these words; keep the book sealed until the time of the end. Many will run here and there, and knowledge will increase.”

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- turn, turn away, turn back
- righteous, righteousness
- forever
- Daniel
- word
- seal, to seal
- run, running
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **Those who are wise will shine like the brightness of the sky above** - This refers to God’s people who will share their wisdom with those around them. (See: **Simile**)
- **those who turn many to righteousness** - This refers to those who help others understand that they are separated from God, as if they were changing the direction in which they were going. AT: “those who teach others to live righteously” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **those who turn ... are like the stars forever and ever** - These people are compared to the stars that shine. AT: “those who turn ... will shine brightly like the stars forever and ever” (See: **Simile**)
- **close up these words; keep the book sealed** - Here “words” represents the book. AT: “close this book and keep it sealed” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **time of the end** - “the final days” or “the end of the world.” See how you translated this in **8:17**.

- **Many will run here and there, and knowledge will increase** - This seems to happen before “the time of the end” during which time the book is sealed. This can be made explicit. AT: “Before that happens, many people will travel here and there, learning more and more about many things” (UDB) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 12 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 12:5-6

UDB:

⁵ When that angel finished speaking, I, Daniel, looked up, and suddenly I saw two other angels. One was standing on the side of the river where I was, and one was standing on the other side. ⁶ One of them called to the other one who was wearing linen clothes and who was now standing further up the river, “How long will it be until the end of these amazing events?”

ULB:

⁵ Then I, Daniel, looked, and there were two others standing. One stood on the bank on this side of the river, and one stood on the bank on the other side of the river. ⁶ One of them said to the man clothed in linen, the one who was upstream along the river, “How long will it be to the end of these amazing events?”

translationWords:

- Daniel
- marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Daniel goes on to tell what he saw next in this vision that began in [10:1](#).
- **there were two others standing** - “there were two other angels standing”
- **the man clothed in linen** - This refers to the angel who appeared to Daniel in [10:5](#), not to one of the angels who is standing beside the river.
- **upstream along the river** - Possible meanings are 1) the angel clothed in linen was above the river or 2) the angel was further upstream along the river.
- **How long will it be to the end of these amazing events?** - “How long will these amazing events last?” This refers to the time from the beginning to the end of the events.
- **these amazing events** - At the time when the angel spoke to Daniel, none of the events in this vision had happened. This definitely refers to the the events in [12:1-4](#), and may possibly also include the events in the vision from chapter 11.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 12 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 12:7**UDB:**

⁷ The one wearing the linen clothes and standing further up the river raised his hands toward the sky and solemnly promised to the one who lives forever, “It will be three and a half years, and when God’s holy people and their strength are no longer being shattered to pieces, then all these things are finished.”

ULB:

⁷ I heard the man clothed in linen, who was upstream along the river—he raised his right hand and his left hand to heaven and swore by the one who lives forever that it would be for a time, times, and half a time. When the power of the holy people has been finally broken, all these things will be completed.

translationWords:

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- oath, swear, swear by
- life, live, living, alive
- forever
- power, powers
- holy, holiness

translationNotes:

- **the man clothed in linen** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the man who was wearing linen clothes” or “the angel who was wearing linen clothes” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **upstream along the river** - Possible meanings are 1) the man clothed in linen was above the river or 2) the man was further upstream along the river.
- **the one who lives forever** - “God, who lives forever”
- **it would be for a time, times, and half a time** - It is best to leave it ambiguous as to when this begins. If you must choose a starting point, the three and a half years probably start with the events of [12:1-4](#).
- **a time, times, and half a time** - “three and a half years” (UDB). These “times” are generally understood to refer to years. One and two and a half equal three and a half.
- **all these things will be completed** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “all these things will have happened” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **all these things** - At the time when the man clothed in linen spoke to Daniel, none of the events in this vision had happened. This refers to the the events in [12:1-4](#), and may include the events in the vision from chapter 11.

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 12 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 12:8-9

UDB:

⁸ I heard what he said, but I did not understand it. So I asked, “Sir, what will be the result when these things end?”

⁹ He replied, “Daniel, you must leave now. I cannot answer your question. The words are closed and sealed until the time of the end.

ULB:

⁸ I heard, but I did not understand. So I asked, “My master, what will be the outcome of all these things?” ⁹ He said, “Go your way, Daniel, for the words are shut up and sealed until the time of the end.

translationWords:

- [lord, master, sir](#)
- [Daniel](#)
- [word](#)
- [seal, to seal](#)

translationNotes:

- **My master** - Daniel refers to the angel clothed in linen as “My master” to show respect to the angel.
- **of all these things** - At the time when the angel clothed in linen spoke to Daniel, none of the events in this vision had happened. This definitely refers to the the events in [12:1-4](#), and may possibly also include the events in the vision from chapter 11.
- **for the words are shut up and sealed** - The vision that was given to Daniel was not to be explained. The book was sealed and no one could access it. AT: “for you are to close up and seal the words you have written” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the time of the end** - “the final days” or “the end of the world.” See how you translated this in [8:17](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 12 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 12:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Many people will be made pure, and they will be refined, but the wicked people will continue to act wickedly. Only those who are wise will understand these things. ¹¹ There will be 1,290 days from the time that people are prevented from offering sacrifices each day, that is, from the time that the enemy brings into the temple the abominable thing that will make it like a wilderness unacceptable to God.

ULB:

¹⁰ Many will be purified, cleansed, and refined, but the wicked will act wickedly. None of the wicked will understand, but those who are wise will understand. ¹¹ From the time that the regular burnt offering is taken away and the abomination that causes complete desolation is set up, there will be 1,290 days.

translationWords:

- pure, purify, purification
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- wise, wisdom
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- abomination, abominable
- devastate, devastation

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The angel clothed in linen continues speaking to Daniel.
- **Many will be purified, cleansed, and refined** - Yahweh does the purifying. These three terms mean basically the same thing. AT: "Yahweh will purify, cleanse, and refine many people" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Doublet](#))
- **refined** - purified by removing anything that does not belong in them
- **but the wicked will act wickedly** - The evil people will do evil or sinful things.
- **None of the wicked will understand** - evil people can not understand spiritual knowledge.
- **but those who are wise will understand** - This refers to those who are wise in obeying Yahweh will understand.
- **the regular burnt offering is ... is set up** - The king of the north is the one who stops the temple sacrifices. AT: "the king of the North takes away the regular burnt offering and sets up the abomination that causes complete desolation" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

- **the abomination that causes complete desolation** - This refers to an idol that will make the temple desolate, that is, that will cause God to leave his temple. See how you translated this in [11:31](#). AT: “the disgusting idol that will cause God to abandon the temple” or “the disgusting thing that will make the temple unclean”
- **1,290 days** - Here “days” refers to a period of time. Most commonly rendered as days, but can also imply years. (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 12 Translation Questions](#)

Daniel 12:12-13**UDB:**

¹² God will be pleased with those who remain faithful until the end of 1,335 days.

¹³ So now I say to you, continue to faithfully trust God until your life on earth ends. You will die, but when everything ends, you will receive your reward from God.”

ULB:

¹² Blessed is the one who waits until the end of the 1,335 days. ¹³ You must go your way until the end, and you will rest. You will rise in the place assigned to you, at the end of days.”

translationWords:

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [rest](#)
- [raise, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [assign, assigned](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The angel clothed in linen continues speaking to Daniel.
- **Blessed is the one who waits** - “Blessed is the person who waits” or “Blessed is anyone who waits”
- **waits** - “endures” or “remains faithful” (UDB)
- **the 1,335 days** - Here “days” is referring to a period of time most commonly rendered as days. However, it can also imply years. (See: [Numbers](#))
- **You must go** - “Daniel, you must go”. This refers to Daniel continuing to live and serve the kings until the appointed time of his death.
- **you will rest** - This is a gentle way of saying “you will die.” (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **You will rise** - This is referring to the First Resurrection of the dead when the righteous people will be raised up.
- **the place assigned to you** - “the place God has assigned to you”

Links:

- [Introduction to Daniel](#)
- [Daniel 12 General Notes](#)
- [Daniel 12 Translation Questions](#)

translationQuestions

Daniel 1

Q? When did Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon come to Jerusalem to surround the city and cut off all supplies to it?

A. Nebuchadnezzar came to Jerusalem in the third year of the reign of Jehoiakim king of Judah. [1:1]

Q? Who gave Nebuchadnezzar victory over Jehoiakim king of Judah?

A. The Lord gave Nebuchadnezzar victory over Jehoiakim. [1:2]

Q? What did the king tell Ashpenaz to do?

A. The king told Ashpenaz to bring in some of the people of Israel, both of the royal family and of the nobility. [1:3]

Q? What kind of young men did the king want to be brought in to Babylon?

A. The king wanted young men without blemish, attractive in appearance, skillful in all wisdom, filled with knowledge and understanding, qualified to serve in the king's palace. [1:4]

Q? What were these young men to be fed?

A. They were to be fed a daily portion of the king's delicacies and some of the king's wine. [1:5]

Q? What was the name of some of these young men from Israel and what names were they given by the chief official?

A. The names of some of these young men and the names given to them by the chief official were: Daniel called Belteshazzar, Hananiah called Shadrach, Mishael called Meshach, and Azariah called Abednego. [1:6-7]

Q? What did Daniel intend in his mind?

A. Daniel intended in his mind that he would not pollute himself with the king's delicacies or the king's wine. [1:8]

Q? How did the chief official respond when Daniel asked him for permission not to pollute himself with the king's delicacies and wine?

A. The chief official told Daniel that he was afraid of the king, that the king had commanded what food and drink Daniel should have and that the king might have the chief official's head if the king saw Daniel looking worse than the other young men of Daniel's own age. [1:10]

Q? What did Daniel ask of the steward who had been assigned over Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael and Azariah?

A. Daniel asked the steward to test them for ten days by giving them only vegetables to eat and water to drink and at the end of ten days to compare them with the other young men who ate the king's delicacies and then to treat them based of what he saw. [1:11-13]

Q? After the steward agreed to the test, what did he observe after ten days when he compared Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael and Azariah to the other young men?

A. The steward observed that the appearance of Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael and Azariah was more healthy, and that they were better nourished than all the young men who ate the king's delicacies. [1:14-15]

Q? What did God give to Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael and Azariah?

A. God gave them knowledge and insight in all literature and wisdom, and Daniel could understand all kinds of visions and dreams. [1:17]

Q? What did the king find when he spoke with the whole group of young men?

A. The king found that there were none to compare with Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael and Azariah. In every question of wisdom and knowledge that the king asked them, he found them ten times better than all the magicians and those who claimed to speak with the dead, who were in his entire kingdom. [1:19-20]

Q? How long was Daniel in Babylon?

A. He was there until the first year of King Cyrus. [1:21]

Daniel 2

Q? When did Nebuchadnezzar have dreams that troubled his mind so that he could not sleep?

A. This occurred in the second year of his reign. [2:1]

Q? Why did the king summon the magicians, the sorcerers, the wise men and those who claimed to speak for the dead?

A. The king wanted these men to tell him about his dreams. [2:2]

Q? What did the king specifically want the wise men to do?

A. The king wanted the wise men to reveal the dream to him and also to interpret the dream for the king. [2:5]

Q? What did the king say would happen to the wise men if they failed to tell the king his dream and interpret it for him?

A. The king said if they failed, the bodies of the wise men would be torn apart and their houses made into hills of dung. [2:5]

Q? What did the king say he would do for the person or people who revealed the dream to him and interpreted it?

A. The king said he would give that person or persons gifts, a reward, and great honor. [2:6]

Q? Who did the wise men say could do what the king asked concerning his dream?

A. The wise men said that there was not a man on earth who could meet the king's demand, only the gods could do that. [2:10-11]

Q? After the wise men's reply to Nebuchadnezzar, what did the king decree?

A. The king decreed that all those known for their wisdom were to be put to death. [2:13]

Q? Who was Arioch?

A. He was the commander of the king's bodyguard, the one the king appointed to kill everyone who was wise in Babylon. [2:14]

Q? How did Daniel interact with Arioch, when he came to Daniel?

A. Daniel replied with prudence and discretion to Arioch. He asked Arioch why the king's decree was so urgent. [2:14-15]

Q? What did Daniel request after speaking with Arioch?

A. Daniel went in and requested an appointment with the king so he could present the interpretation to the king. [2:16]

Q? What did Daniel do after the secret was revealed to him?

A. Daniel praised the God of heaven. [2:19]

Q? For what did Daniel thank the God of his ancestors?

A. Daniel thanked the God of his ancestors for the wisdom and power the God of his ancestors had given him. [2:23]

Q? Who did Daniel go see after the secret was revealed to him?

A. Daniel went in to see Arioch. [2:24]

Q? What did Daniel tell Arioch?

A. Daniel told Arioch not to kill the wise men in Babylon. Daniel told Arioch to escort him before the king so Daniel could tell the king the dream's meaning. [2:24]

Q? When Daniel was brought in to the king, who did Daniel say could reveal the mystery the king had demanded?

A. Daniel said there is a God who lives in the heavens, who reveals secrets. [2:28]

Q? In general what did Daniel say the king's dream was about?

A. Daniel said the dream was about what would happen in the days to come. [2:28]

Q? Why was the dream revealed to Daniel?

A. The dream was revealed to Daniel so that the king might understand the meaning and know the thoughts deep within himself. [2:30]

Q? What did the statue that the king saw in his dream look like?

A. The statue was large and had a head of gold, breast and arms of silver, its middle and thighs were bronze, its legs of iron and its feet part iron and part clay. [2:31-32]

Q? What happened to the statue the king saw in his dream?

A. The king saw a stone cut, but not by human hands. The stone struck the statue's feet and the whole statue shattered into pieces which the wind carried away. [2:34-35]

Q? What happened to the stone that struck the statue?

A. The stone that struck the statue became a great mountain and filled the whole earth. [2:35]

Q? Who was the head of gold?

A. King Nebuchadnezzar was the head of gold. [2:38]

Q? What will the God of heaven do in the days of the kingdom that is partly iron and partly clay?

A. In those days the God of heaven will set up a kingdom that will never be destroyed or conquered by another people. [2:44]

Q? What did Nebuchadnezzar command to be done for Daniel after he finished telling the king the dream and its interpretation?

A. The king commanded an offering to be made and incense be offered up to Daniel. [2:46]

Q? What did Nebuchadnezzar say concerning Daniel's God?

A. Nebuchadnezzar said Daniel's God is the God of gods, the Lord of kings and the one who reveals secrets. [2:47]

Q? What did Nebuchadnezzar do after Daniel made a request of the king?

A. The king appointed Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego to be administrators over the province of Babylon. [2:49]

Daniel 3

Q? What were the dimensions of the gold statue that king Nebuchadnezzar made and set up on the Plain of Dura?

A. The statue was sixty cubits tall and six cubits wide. [3:1]

Q? Who came to the dedication of the statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made?

A. The provincial governors, regional governors, and local governors, together with the counselors, treasurers, judges, magistrates and all the high officials of the provinces came to the dedication. [3:3]

Q? What did Nebuchadnezzar want those in attendance at the dedication to do?

A. He wanted those in attendance to fall down and prostrate themselves to the golden statue when they heard the sound of the horns, flutes, zithers, lyres, harps, and pipes, and all kinds of music. [3:4-5]

Q? What did the king command to happen to those who didn't fall down and worship the statue when they heard all the instruments and the music?

A. The king said that those who wouldn't fall down and worship, at that very moment, would be thrown into a blazing furnace. [3:6]

Q? Who didn't fall down and worship the statue?

A. Certain Jews, their names being Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, would not fall down and worship the statue. [3:12]

Q? Who brought accusations against Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego?

A. Certain Chaldeans came and brought accusations against them. [3:8]

Q? What was the response of Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego to the king when the king repeated the command to fall down and worship the statue, and stated the consequences if they didn't follow the king's command?

A. Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego responded that their God could and would keep them safe and rescue them from the blazing furnace. But even if not, they would not worship Nebuchadnezzar's gods or prostrate themselves to the statue. [3:17-18]

Q? What did Nebuchadnezzar command concerning Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego?

A. Nebuchadnezzar ordered the furnace to be heated seven times hotter than normal, and for Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego to be tied up and thrown into the furnace. [3:19-20]

Q? What happened to Shadrach, Meshach, Abednego and the men who took them to put them in the furnace?

A. The men who took up Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego were killed by the very hot flames from the furnace and Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego fell into the furnace. [3:22-23]

Q? What caused Nebuchadnezzar to be amazed and stand up quickly?

A. Nebuchadnezzar was amazed because he saw four men, not tied up, walking around in the fire and they weren't hurt and the brilliance of the fourth man was like a son of the gods. [3:25]

Q? What did those present observe about Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego after they came out of the fire.

A. Those present observed that the fire had not hurt their bodies; the hair on their heads was not singed; their robes were not harmed; and there was no smell of fire on them. [3:27]

Q? What decree did Nebuchadnezzar issue after the event of Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego and the blazing furnace?

A. Nebuchadnezzar decreed that any people, nation or language that spoke anything against the God of Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego would be torn apart, their houses would be made into hills of sewage because there was no other god who was able to save like that. [3:29]

Q? What did the king do for Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego?

A. Nebuchadnezzar, the king, promoted Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego in the province of Babylon. [3:30]

Daniel 4

Q? To whom did Nebuchadnezzar send the decree?

A. Nebuchadnezzar sent the decree to all peoples, nations, and languages who lived on the earth.

[4:1]

Q? Why did Nebuchadnezzar send the decree?

A. Nebuchadnezzar sent the decree to tell everyone about the signs and wonders the Most High had done for him. [4:2]

Q? What did Nebuchadnezzar say about the Most High?

A. Nebuchadnezzar said about the Most High, “How great are his signs, and how mighty are his wonders! His kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, and his dominion lasts from generation to generation.” [4:3]

Q? What made Nebuchadnezzar afraid?

A. A dream Nebuchadnezzar made him afraid. [4:5]

Q? Why did Nebuchadnezzar issue a decree to bring before him all the wise men of Babylon?

A. Nebuchadnezzar wanted the wise men of Babylon to come and interpret his dream for him.

[4:6]

Q? What was Daniel’s Babylonian name and what was Daniel’s position in Nebuchadnezzar’s kingdom?

A. Daniel’s Babylonian name was Belteshazzar and he held the position of “chief of the magicians”.

[4:8-9]

Q? Who did Nebuchadnezzar believe was able to tell the interpretation of his dream?

A. Nebuchadnezzar believed Daniel could interpret his dream for him, for Nebuchadnezzar said of Daniel, "...the spirit of the holy gods is in you and no mystery is too difficult for you." [4:8-9]

Q? What did Nebuchadnezzar see in the first part of his dream?

A. Nebuchadnezzar saw a great, strong, beautiful tree that reached to the heavens. It provided shade for animals and an abode for the birds. It had abundant fruit that fed all living creatures. [4:10-12]

Q? What did the holy messenger from the heavens say to do to the tree?

A. The holy messenger said to chop down the tree, cut off its branches, strip off its leaves and scatter its fruit. [4:13-14]

Q? What was to be done with the tree stump?

A. The stump was to be left in the earth bound with a band of iron and brass. Let it be wet with dew. Let it live with the animals. Let his mind be that of an animal and not of a man for seven years. [4:15-16]

Q? What was the purpose of doing this to the tree in Nebuchadnezzar's dream?

A. The purpose was so that those who are alive would know that the Most High rules over the kingdoms of peoples and gives them to anyone he wishes to place over them. [4:17]

Q? Who did Daniel say the tree was in Nebuchadnezzar's dream?

A. Daniel said the tree was Nebuchadnezzar. [4:22]

Q? What was to happen to Nebuchadnezzar's until he acknowledged that the Most High rules over the kingdoms of people and that he gives them to anyone he wishes?

A. Nebuchadnezzar was to be driven from among men. He would live in the fields with the wild animals and eat grass like an ox and be wet with the dew from the heavens. [4:25]

Q? How long was it to be before Nebuchadnezzar would acknowledge that the Most High rules over the kingdoms of people and he gives them to anyone he wishes?

A. Seven years were to pass until Nebuchadnezzar acknowledged that the Most High rules over the kingdoms of people and he gives them to anyone he wishes. [4:25]

Q? After interpreting the dream for Nebuchadnezzar what was Daniel's advice for him?

A. Daniel advised Nebuchadnezzar to stop sinning and to do what was right. He also told Nebuchadnezzar to turn away from his sins by showing mercy to the oppressed. [4:27]

Q? How long was it before the interpretation of Nebuchadnezzar's dream began to happen?

A. All these things began to happen twelve months after his dream. [4:28]

Q? What happened to Nebuchadnezzar at the end of the seven years?

A. Nebuchadnezzar's sanity was restored to him?

Q? What did Nebuchadnezzar do after his sanity was restored to him?

A. Nebuchadnezzar praised the Most High, acknowledged his everlasting reign and confessed that the Most High does whatever suits the Most High's will. [4:33-35]

Q? What happened to Nebuchadnezzar's kingdom?

A. The kingdom was given back to him. [4:36]

Q? What was Nebuchadnezzar's final statement concerning the King of heaven?

A. His statement was: "Now I, Nebuchadnezzar, praise, extol, and honor the King of heaven, for all his deeds are right, and his ways are just. He can humble those who walk in their own pride."

[4:37]

Daniel 5

Q? For whom did Belshazzar, the king, make a great feast?

A. He made a great feast for a thousand of his noblemen. [5:1]

Q? Who was this Belshazzar?

A. He was the son of Nebuchadnezzar. [5:2]

Q? What containers did they use to drink the wine from at this feast?

A. They used the gold containers that had been taken out of the temple, the house of God, in Jerusalem. [5:3]

Q? What did the people at the feast do as they drank the wine?

A. They praised their idols made of gold and silver, bronze, iron, wood, and stone. [5:4]

Q? As the people were drinking wine and praising their idols what happened?

A. The fingers of a human hand appeared in front of the lamp stand and wrote on the plaster wall in the king's palace. [5:5]

Q? What was the king's immediate response when he saw the hand?

A. The king's face changed and his thoughts frightened him; his limbs could not support him, and his knees were knocking together. [5:6]

Q? What did the king promise to the one who could explain the writing on the plaster wall and its meaning?

A. The king promised that the one who explained the writing and its meaning would be clothed in purple and would have a gold chain put around his neck and that he would have the authority of the third highest ruler in the kingdom. [5:7]

Q? According to the king what qualities did he say he had heard about Daniel?

A. The king told Daniel he had heard that Daniel had the spirit of the Gods in him and that Daniel possessed light and understanding and excellent wisdom . [5:13]

Q? What was Daniel’s response when he was told of the rewards he would receive for reading the writing and explaining its meaning?

A. Daniel told the king, “Let your gifts be for yourself, and give your rewards to another person. Nevertheless, I will read the writing to you, king, and will tell you the meaning.” [5:17]

Q? Why was Nebuchadnezzar brought down from his kingly throne and why was his majesty taken away from him?

A. Nebuchadnezzar lost his majesty and his throne because his heart became arrogant and his spirit was hardened so that he acted presumptuously. [5:20]

Q? What were Daniel’s charges against Belshazzar?

A. Daniel said Belshazzar had not humbled his heart, he had lifted himself up against the Lord of Heaven and he had not honored the God who held his breath in his hand and who knew all his ways. [5:22-23]

Q? What was the meaning of the writing on the plaster wall?

A. The meaning was as follows: God has numbered Belshazzar’s kingdom and brought it to an end. Belshazzar is weighed in the scales and found lacking. Belshazzar’s kingdom is divided and is given to the Medes and Persians. [5:26-28]

Q? What happened that night after Daniel gave his interpretation of the writing to Belshazzar?

A. That night Belshazzar, the Babylonian king, was killed, and Darius the Mede received the kingdom. [5:30-31]

Q? How old was Darius the Mede when he received the kingdom?

A. Darius the Mede was about sixty-two years old when he received the kingdom. [5:31]

Daniel 6

Q? Who did Darius appoint over the kingdom?

A. He appointed 120 provincial governors with three chief administrators over them. [6:1-2]

Q? Who was one of the three chief administrators?

A. Daniel was one of the three chief administrators. [6:2]

Q? Why were the three chief administrators appointed?

A. They were appointed to supervise the provincial governors, so that the king should suffer no loss. [6:2]

Q? Who was the king planning to put over the whole kingdom?

A. The king planned to put Daniel over the whole kingdom. [6:3]

Q? Why could the other chief administrators and provincial governors find no corruption, no failure in his duty, no mistakes and no negligence in Daniel's work for the kingdom?

A. They could find none of these things because Daniel was faithful. [6:4]

Q? What was the only area of his life that the other chief administrators and provincial governors think they might find something to complain against Daniel?

A. They thought they might find something against Daniel regarding the law of his God. [6:5]

Q? What did the provincial governors and the other chief administrators advise King Darius to do?

A. They advised Darius to issue a decree and enforce it that whoever made a petition to any god or man except King Darius for thirty days, that person had to be thrown into a den of lions. [6:7]

Q? What did Daniel do after he learned that the decree had been issued and the document signed into law?

A. Daniel went into his house, got down on his knees and prayed giving thanks to God as he had done before. [6:10]

Q? What did the men who plotted against Daniel do when they saw Daniel make requests and seek help from God?

A. Those men went to the king and told him that Daniel paid no attention to the king or his decree and that Daniel prayed to God three times a day. [6:13]

Q? What did the king do when he heard Daniel had disobeyed the king's decree?

A. The king became terribly distressed and he applied his mind to rescue Daniel from his ruling. [6:14]

Q? After Daniel was thrown into the lion's den, what did the king do?

A. The king sealed the entrance to the den with his own signet ring. He then went to the palace and fasted through the night and did not sleep. [6:17-18]

Q? The next day after Daniel was thrown into the lions den, when the king went to the den, what did he ask Daniel?

A. The king asked Daniel if the God whom Daniel served continually had been able to save him from the lions. [6:20]

Q? How did Daniel answer the king?

A. Daniel said to the king, "King, live forever! My God has sent his messenger and has shut the lion's mouths, and they have not hurt me. For I was found blameless before him and also before you, king, and I have done you no harm." [6:21-22]

Q? What was the first order the king gave after he found Daniel alive in the lion's den?

A. The first order the king gave after finding Daniel alive was that they should take Daniel up out of the den. [6:23]

Q? What was the second order the king gave after he found Daniel alive in the lion's den?

A. The second order was to bring the men who had accused Daniel and throw them into the lion's den along with their children and their wives. [6:24]

Q? What did Darius say concerning God in his decree about the God of Daniel?

A. Darius said of the God of Daniel "...he is the living God and lives forever, and his kingdom shall not be destroyed; his dominion shall be to the end. He makes us safe and rescues us, and he does signs and wonders in heaven and in earth; he has kept Daniel safe from the power of the lions. [6:26-27]

Q? During whose reign did Daniel prosper?

A. Daniel prospered during the reign of Darius and during the reign of Cyrus the Persian. [6:28]

Daniel 7

Q? When did Daniel have a dream and visions in his mind?

A. Daniel had a dream and visions while lying on his bed during the first year of Belshazzar king of Babylonia. [7:1]

Q? In Daniel's vision what was stirring up the great sea?

A. The four winds of heaven were stirring up the great sea. [7:2]

Q? What came up out of the sea?

A. Four large animals, each one different from the other came up out of the sea. [7:3]

Q? What was given to the animal that was like a lion?

A. The mind of a man was given to it. [7:4]

Q? What was the bear-like animal told to do?

A. It was told to get up and devour many people. [7:5]

Q? What was the leopard-like animal given?

A. It was given authority to rule. [7:6]

Q? What did the fourth animal do?

A. The fourth animal devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. [7:7]

Q? What did Daniel see happen to the fourth animal as he considered its horns?

A. Daniel saw another little horn grow up among the other ten horns. Three of the first horns were wrenched out by the roots. Daniel saw that the little horn had eyes like a man and a mouth that boasted about great things. [7:8]

Q? Who sat on one of the thrones that was set up?

A. The Ancient of Days sat upon one of the thrones. [7:9]

Q? What business was being conducted by the Ancient of Days?

A. The court was in session and the books were opened. [7:10]

Q? What happened to the four animals?

A. The animal with the horn that spoke boastful words was killed, its body destroyed and it was handed over to be burned up. The other three animals had their authority to rule taken away but their lives were prolonged for a time. [7:11-12]

Q? In Daniel's vision, who was presented to the Ancient of Days?

A. One who came with the clouds of heaven like a son of man was presented to the Ancient of Days. [7:13]

Q? What was given to this one who was "like a son of man"?

A. Everlasting authority to rule, a kingdom that will never be destroyed, and glory and royal power were given to this one who was "like a son of man". [7:14]

Q? What was Daniel told the four animals represented in his vision?

A. Daniel was told that the four animals were four kings that would arise from the earth. [7:17]

Q? Who will receive the kingdom and possess it forever?

A. The saints of the Most High will receive the kingdom and possess it forever and ever. [7:18]

Q? When Daniel asked one standing there about the fourth animal, what did that one say the fourth animal was and would do to the earth?

A. That one said the fourth animal was a fourth kingdom and that it would devour the whole earth, trample it down and break it into pieces. [7:23]

Q? What did the one standing there say about the ten horns?

A. That one standing there said that ten kings would arise out of the fourth kingdom. [7:24]

Q? What will the one who speaks against the most high do and what will be his end?

A. He will oppress the holy people of the most high. He will try to change the festivals and the law. He will rule over these things for one year, two years, and half a year but his royal power would be taken away to be consumed and destroyed at the end. [7:25-26]

Q? To whom will the kingdom and dominion under the whole heaven be given?

A. It will be given to the people who belong to the Most High. [7:27]

Q? What was Daniel's response to this vision?

A. Daniel was greatly alarmed and his face changed in appearance, but he kept the vision to himself. [7:28]

Daniel 8

Q? When did Daniel have his second vision?

A. Daniel had his second vision in the third year of the reign of king Belshazzar. [8:1]

Q? Where was Daniel in his vision?

A. Daniel was in the fortified city of Susa in the province of Elam beside the Ulai Canal. [8:2]

Q? What were the two animals Daniel saw in this vision?

A. Daniel saw a ram and a male goat in this vision. [8:3]

Q? What were the ram's two horns like?

A. One of the ram's horns was longer than the other but the shorter horn grew longer than the previously longer horn. [8:3]

Q? How powerful was the ram?

A. No animal could stand before the ram. None could be rescued from the ram's hand. He did whatever he wanted, and he became great. [8:4]

Q? What kind of horns did the goat have?

A. The goat only had one large horn between his eyes. [8:5]

Q? What did the goat do to the ram?

A. The goat hit the ram and broke off its two horns, knocked the ram down to the ground and trampled on him. [8:7]

Q? When the large horn of the goat was broken off, what grew in its place?

A. Four other large horns that pointed to the four winds of heaven grew up in place of the one that was broken off. [8:8]

Q? What happened to one of the goat's four horns?

A. Out of one of the horns grew another horn, little at first, but which became very large in the south, in the east, and in the glorious land of Israel. [8:9]

Q? What did this horn do when it became large?

A. It became so large that it engaged in war with the army of heaven. [8:10]

Q? Why will the army be given over to the goat's horn and the burnt offering stopped?

A. This will happen because of rebellion. [8:12]

Q? How long will these things last, this vision about the burnt offering, the sin that brings destruction, the handing over of the sanctuary, and heaven's army being trampled on?

A. It will last for 2,300 evenings and mornings. [8:14]

Q? What will happen after the 2,300 evenings and mornings?

A. The sanctuary will be put right. [8:14]

Q? Who was told to help Daniel understand the vision?

A. Gabriel was told to help Daniel understand the vision. [8:16]

Q? For when was the vision? What time did it concern?

A. The vision was for the time of wrath. It concerned the fixed time for the end. [8:19]

Q? What did the ram with two horns and the male goat represent in Daniel's vision?

A. The ram with the two horns are the kings of Media and Persia. The male goat is the king of Greece. [8:20-21]

Q? What did the four horns represent, the horns that came in place of the horn that was broken off?

A. The four horns represent four kingdoms that will arise from the nation represented by the horn that was broken off. [8:22]

Q? What will this intelligent, grim-face king do?

A. He will cause widespread destruction and succeed in whatever he does. He will destroy powerful people, people who are holy. He will make deceit prosper under his hand. He will rise up against the king of kings. [8:24-25]

Q? What will finally happen to the intelligent, grim-faced king?

A. He will be broken, but not by human power. [8:25]

Q? How did this vision affect Daniel?

A. Daniel was overcome and lay weak for several days and he was appalled by the vision. [8:27]

Daniel 9

Q? Ahasuerus was king over what realm?

A. He was the king over the realm of the Babylonians. [9:1]

Q? What did Daniel observed by studying Yahweh's word to Jeremiah the prophet?

A. He observed that Jerusalem's abandonment would end after seventy years. [9:2]

Q? How did Daniel seek the Lord God?

A. Daniel sought the Lord God with prayer and requests, with fasting, wearing sackcloth, and sitting in ashes. [9:3]

Q? What was the first thing Daniel did when he went to the Lord God in prayer?

A. Daniel made confession of the sins of the Israelites. [9:4]

Q? To whom did the prophets speak in the name of God?

A. The prophets spoke to the kings, the leaders, the ancestors, and to all the people of the land. [9:6]

Q? Why did shame belong on the faces of the Israelites?

A. Shame belonged on their faces because they sinned against the Lord. [9:8]

Q? What had been poured out on Israel because of their sin?

A. The curse and oath that are written in the Law of Moses, the servant of God, had been poured out on them. [9:11]

Q? How did Yahweh confirm the words he spoke against Israel and their rulers?

A. Yahweh confirmed his words by bringing on Israel and their rulers a great disaster. [9:12]

Q? What did Daniel say that Israel had not done to beg God for mercy?

A. Daniel said they had not turned away from their sins and had not paid attention to God's truth. [9:13]

Q? What did Daniel say was the reason the Lord God should forgive Israel?

A. Daniel said the Lord should forgive Israel because of the Lord's righteous deeds. [9:16]

Q? When did Gabriel come to Daniel?

A. Gabriel came to Daniel at the time of the evening sacrifice while Daniel was praying. [9:21]

Q? Why did Gabriel come to Daniel?

A. Gabriel came to give Daniel insight and understanding. [9:22]

Q? Why were seventy sevens of years decreed for Daniel's people and his holy city?

A. The seventy sevens of years were decreed to end the guilt, put an end to sin, to atone for wickedness, to bring everlasting righteousness, to carry out the vision and the prophecy, and to consecrate the most holy place. [9:24]

Q? How much time will elapse between the issuing of the order to restore and rebuild Jerusalem to the coming of the anointed one?

A. Seven sevens and sixty-two sevens will elapse between the two events.. [9:25]

Q? When will the anointed one be destroyed?

A. He will be destroyed after the sixty-two sevens of years. [9:26]

Q? What will a coming ruler do?

A. He will confirm a covenant with many for one seven. In the middle of the seven he will put an end to the sacrifice and the offering. [9:27]

Q? What will happen to the one who makes desolate?

A. A full end and destruction are decreed for that one. [9:27]

Daniel 10

Q? What message was revealed to Daniel in the third year of Cyrus king of Persia?

A. The message was about a great war. [10:1]

Q? How was Daniel able to understand the message?

A. Daniel understood the message because he had insight from a vision. [10:1]

Q? Who did Daniel see in his vision?

A. He saw a man dressed in linen with a pure gold belt around his waist. [10:5]

Q? What was the man in Daniel's vision like?

A. The man's body was like topaz, his face like lightning, his eyes like flaming torches, his arms and feet like polished bronze, and the sound of his words like the sound of a great crown. [10:6]

Q? What was Daniel's response when he saw the great vision and heard the man's words?

A. Daniel's radiant appearance was fearfully changed, and no strength remained in him. He fell on his face in deep sleep with his face to the ground. [10:8-9]

Q? When was the angel sent to Daniel?

A. The angel was sent on the first day Daniel set his mind to understand and humble himself before God. [10:12]

Q? Why did it take the angel twenty-one days to come to Daniel?

A. The angel was detained by the prince of the kingdom of Persia who resisted him. [10:13]

Q? When will the events of the vision happen?

A. The vision was about the last days, the days yet to come. [10:14]

Q? What did Daniel say the vision had done to him?

A. Daniel said the vision had turned his anguish on him and the he had no strength left and no breath left in him. [10:16-17]

Q? What did the one with an appearance like a human being do to strengthen Daniel?

A. The one who looked like a human being touched Daniel to strengthen him. [10:18]

Q? What was the one who looked like a human being say he was going to do after he left Daniel?

A. He said he was returning to fight against the prince of Persia. [10:20]

Q? What did the one who looked like a human being say he was going to tell Daniel?

A. He said he was going to tell Daniel what was written in the book of truth. [10:21]

Daniel 11

Q? How will a fourth king in Persia gain power?

A. He will gain power through his riches. [11:2]

Q? Against what kingdom did that fourth Persian king stir up everyone?

A. He stirred everyone up against the kingdom of Greece. [11:2]

Q? To whom will the kingdom of the mighty king not be given?

A. That kingdom will not be given to the king's own descendants. [11:4]

Q? Who will make an alliance?

A. The king of the South and one of his commanders who will become a king of the North will make an alliance. [11:5-6]

Q? Who will come to confirm the alliance between the king of the South and the king of the North?

A. The daughter of the king of the South will come to the king of the North to confirm the agreement. [11:6]

Q? What will the branch from the daughter of the king of the South do to the king of the North?

A. He will attack the army and enter the fortress of the king of the North and conquer them. [11:7]

Q? What will the sons of the king of the North do?

A. They will wage war and assemble a great army. They will overflow like a flood, pass through, and repeat the assault all the way to the fortress of the king of the South. [11:10]

Q? What will the king of the South do in response to the attack by the sons of the king of the North?

A. The king of the South will march out in a rage and fight against the king of the North. [11:11]

Q? Who won this battle between the North and the South?

A. The king of the South won that battle. [11:11-12]

Q? After some years, what will the king of the North do?

A. He will raise another great army supplied with much equipment and will surely come. [11:13]

Q? In those times who else will rise against the king of the South?

A. In those times many will rise against the king of the South including the most violent among Daniel's people. [11:14]

Q? What will happen this time when the king of the North attacks the king of the South?

A. The king of the South will not be able to stand against him. The king of the North will do whatever he wants against the king of the South. [11:15-16]

Q? Why will the king of the North give a daughter in marriage to the king of the South?

A. The king of the North will do this in order to destroy the kingdom of the South. [11:17]

Q? What will happen to this king of the North?

A. A commander will put an end to the insolence of the king of the North and will cause his insolence to turn back upon him. He will stumble and fall; he will not be found. [11:18-19]

Q? What will the one who rises up in place of the king of the North do?

A. He will force taxes to be paid to provide for the splendor of the kingdom. [11:20]

Q? What will happen to this one who forces taxes to be paid?

A. After only a few days that one will be destroyed, but not in anger or in battle. [11:20]

Q? How will a despised person who has not been given the honor of royalty come to power?

A. He will come in quietly and will take over the kingdom by flattery. [11:21]

Q? What will this despised king do once an alliance is made with him?

A. From the time an alliance is made with him, he will act deceitfully. [11:23]

Q? What will happen when this deceitful king wages war against the king of the South?

A. The king of the South will not be able to stand against the deceitful king because of all the plots devised against him. [11:25]

Q? Why will the king of the North and the king of the South sit at the same table and lie to each other?

A. They will lie to each other because their hearts are set on evil against each other. [11:27]

Q? What will the heart of the king of the North be set against?

A. His heart will be set against the holy covenant. [11:28]

Q? How will the rage of the king of the North against the holy covenant manifest itself?

A. The king of the North will manifest his rage against the holy covenant by showing favor to those who forsake the holy covenant. [11:30]

Q? What will the wise do at that time?

A. At that time the wise will give understanding to many?

Q? What will happen to the wise?

A. For days the wise will fall by the sword and flame, they will be taken as prisoners and robbed of their possessions. When they stumble they will receive a little help. [11:33-34]

Q? Why will some of the wise stumble?

A. Some of them will stumble so that they may be refined, cleansed, and made pure until the time of the end. [11:35]

Q? Above whom will this deceitful king of the North exalt himself?

A. He will exalt and magnify himself above every god; including the God of gods, the gods of his ancestors, and the god desired by women. [11:36-37]

Q? What will this deceitful king of the North do for those who acknowledge him?

A. He will give honor to those who acknowledge him. He will make them rulers over many people. [11:39]

Q? At the time of the end what will happen when the king of the North comes into the glorious land?

A. At that time tens of thousands of Israelites will stumble and fall. [11:41]

Q? Who will escape from the hand of the king of the North?

A. Many from Edom and Moab, and the remaining people of Ammon will escape from his hand. [11:41]

Q? What are some of the countries over which this king of the North will extend his power?

A. This king of the North will extend his power over Egypt, the Libyans, and the Ethiopians. [11:42-43]

Q? What will this king of the North do when reports from the east and north alarm him?

A. He will go out with great rage to destroy and to devote many to destruction. [11:44]

Q? Where will this king of the North set up his the tents of his palace?

A. He will set up the tents of his palace between the seas, at the mountain of the beauty of holiness. [11:45]

Q? Who will help the king of the North at the end?

A. The king of the North will come to his end and there will be no one to help him. [11:45]

Daniel 12

Q? Who is it that guards Daniel's people?

A. Michael, the great prince guards Daniel's people. [12:1]

Q? How bad will be the time of trouble written of here?

A. It will be a time of trouble such as never was since the beginning of any nation until that time. [12:1]

Q? At that time who will be saved?

A. At that time Daniel's people will be saved, everyone whose name is found written in the book. [12:1]

Q? What will happen to many of those who sleep in the dust of the earth?

A. Some of those who sleep in the dust of the earth will rise up to everlasting life and some will rise up to shame and everlasting contempt. [12:2]

Q? What will happen to those who are wise and those who turn many to righteousness?

A. Those who are wise will shine like the brightness of the sky above, and those who turn many to righteousness like the stars forever and ever. [12:3]

Q? How long was Daniel told to keep the book sealed?

A. He was told to keep the book sealed until the time of the end. [12:4]

Q? How long did the man clothed in linen say it would be until the end of these amazing events?

A. The man clothed in linen said it would be for a time, times, and a half. When the shattering of the power of the holy people comes to an end, all these things will be completed. [12:7]

Q? What did the man clothed in linen give as a reason why Daniel did not understand what the man clothed in linen was telling him?

A. The man clothed in linen said to Daniel, "Go your way, Daniel, for the words are shut up and sealed until the time of the end. [12:9]

Q? At the time of the end who will and who won't understand the words of the prophecy?

A. None of the wicked will understand, but those who are wise will understand. [12:10]

Q? How much time will elapse between the time that the regular burnt offering is taken away and the abomination that causes complete desolation is set up?

A. There will be 1,290 days between those two events. [12:11]

Q? At that time who does the man clothed in linen say will be blessed?

A. The man clothed in linen said, "Blessed is the one who waits until the end of the 1,335 days." [12:12]

Q? What did the man clothed in lined say would happen to Daniel?

A. He said that Daniel would rest and that he would rise in the place assigned to him at the end of days. [12:13]

translationWords

abomination, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include: lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by, “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “is an abomination to” could include: “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as, “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [Daniel](#), [desecrate](#), [desolate](#), [desolation](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

accuse, accusation, accuser

Definition:

The terms “accuse” and “accusation” refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an “accuser.”

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called “the accuser.”

Bible References:

Waiting

acknowledge

Facts:

The term “acknowledge” means to give proper recognition to something or someone.

- To acknowledge God also involves acting in a way that shows that what he says is true.
- People who acknowledge God will show it by obeying him, which brings glory to his name.
- To acknowledge something means to believe that it is true, with actions and words that confirm that.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of acknowledging that something is true, “acknowledge” could be translated as “admit” or “declare” or “confess to be true” or “believe.”
- When referring to acknowledging a person, this term could be translated as, “accept” or “recognize the value of” or “tell others that (the person) is faithful.”
- In the context of acknowledging God, this could be translated as, “believe and obey God” or “declare who God is” or “tell other people about how great God is” or “confess that what God says and does is true.”

(See also: [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [salvation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

administration, administrator

Facts:

The terms “administration” and “administrator” refer to managing or governing of people of a country to help it function in an orderly way.

- Daniel and three other Jewish young men were appointed to be administrators, or government officials, over certain parts of Babylon.
- In the New Testament, the term “administration” is used to refer to one of the gifts of the Holy Spirit.
- A person who has the spiritual gift of administration is able to lead and govern people as well as supervise the maintenance of buildings and other property.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “administrator” could include, “governor” or “organizer” or “manager” or “ruler” or “government official.”
- The term “administration” could be translated as, “governing” or “management” or “leadership.” or “organization.”
- Expressions such as “in charge of” or “taking care of” or “keeping order” could possibly be part of the translation of these terms.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Daniel](#), [gift](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [Hananiah](#), [Mishael](#), [Azariah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- An adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- A nation can be called an “adversary” when it fights against another nation.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See: [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ahasuerus

Facts:

Ahasuerus was a king who ruled over the ancient kingdom of Persia for twenty years.

- This was during the time the exiled Jews were living in Babylonia, which had come under Persian rule.
- Another name for this king may have been Xerxes.
- After sending away his queen in a fit of anger, King Ahasuerus later chose a Jewish woman named Esther to be his new wife and queen.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Esther](#), [Ethiopia](#), [Ethiopian](#), [exile](#), [the Exile](#), [Persia](#), [Persians](#))

* [Prev chunk: publish-current](#)

- [Next chunk: review-publish](#) | [publish-current](#)

Bible References:

Waiting

alarm, alarmed**Facts:**

An alarm is something that warns people about something that could harm them. To “be alarmed” is to be very worried and frightened about something dangerous or threatening.

- King Jehoshapat was alarmed when he heard that the Moabites were planning to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- Jesus told his disciples to not be alarmed when they hear about disasters happening in the last days.
- The expression “sound an alarm” means to give a warning. In ancient times, a person could sound an alarm by making a noise with something like.

Translation Suggestions

- To “alarm someone” means to “cause someone to worry” or “to worry someone.”
- To “be alarmed” could be translated as “be worried” or “be frightened” or “be very concerned.”
- The expression “sound an alarm” could be translated by, “publicly warn” or “announce that danger is coming” or “blow a trumpet to warn about danger.”

(See also: [Jehoshaphat](#), [Moab](#), [Moabite](#), [Moabites](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions express how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have expressions to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be, “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include: “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess

Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as, “Ammonite woman.”
- The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Balaam](#), [curse](#), [cursed](#), [Jordan River](#), [Lot](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God is by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include, “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include, “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh who looked like an angel.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), [messenger](#), [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-12] God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- [22-03] The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”
- [23-06] Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God...
- [25-08] Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- [38-12] Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- [38-15] “I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me.”

angry, anger

Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, it often is sinful and selfish, but sometimes it is righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase, “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

anoint, anointed

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle, were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in, “appointed to eternal life.” This means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include, “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as, “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as, “be chosen.”

Bible References:

Waiting

assign, assigned**Facts:**

The term “assign” or “assigned” refers to appointing someone to do a specific task.

- The prophet Samuel foretold that King Saul would “assign” the best young men of Israel to serve in the military.
- Moses “assigned” each of the twelve tribes of Israel a portion of the land of Canaan for them to live on.
- Under the Old Testament law, certain tribes of Israel were assigned to serve as priests, artists, singers and builders.
- Depending on the context, “assign” could be translated as “give” or “appoint” or “choose for the task of.”
- The term “assigned” could be translated as “appointed” or “given the task.”

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [Samuel](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

atonement, atone

Definition:

The terms “atone” and “atonement” refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people’s sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ’s death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserved because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “atone” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “pay for” or “provide payment for” or “cause someone’s sins to be forgiven” or “make amends for a crime.”
- Ways to translate “atonement” could include, “payment” or “sacrifice to pay for sin” or “providing the means of forgiveness.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: [atonement lid](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [propitiation](#), [reconcile](#), [reconciliation](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

authority

Definition:

The term “authority” refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” refers to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as, “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as, “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

awe, awesome

Definition:

The term “awe” refers to the sense of amazement and deep respect that comes from seeing something great, powerful, and magnificent.

- The term “awesome” describes someone or something that inspires a feeling of awe.
- The visions of the glory of God seen by the prophet Ezekiel were “awesome” or “awe-inspiring.”
- Typical human responses showing awe of God’s presence include: fear, bowing or kneeling down, covering the face, and trembling.

(See also: [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Azariah

Facts:

Azariah was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- One Azariah is best known by his Babylonian name, Abednego. He was one of many Israelites from Judah who were captured by Nebuchadnezzar's army and taken to live in Babylon. Azariah and his fellow Israelites Hananiah and Mishael refused to worship the Babylonian king, so he had them thrown into a blazing furnace as punishment. But God protected them and they were not harmed at all.
- Uzziah king of Judah was also known as "Azariah."
- Another Azariah was an Old Testament high priest.
- In the time of the prophet Jeremiah, a man named Azariah wrongly urged the Israelites to disobey God by leaving their homeland.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Daniel](#), [Hananiah](#), [Mishael](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Uzziah](#), [Azariah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Babylon, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- In the New Testament, the term “Babylon” is sometimes used as a metaphor to refer to places, people, and thinking patterns that are associated with idol-worship and other sinful behaviors.
- The phrase “Babylon the Great” or “great city of Babylon” refers metaphorically to a city or nation that was large, wealthy, and sinful, just as the ancient city of Babylon was. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [Babel](#), [Chaldea](#), [Chaldean](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **[20-07]** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **[20-09]** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **[20-11]** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

banquet

Definition:

A banquet is large, formal meal that usually includes several food courses.

- In ancient times, kings often served banquet meals to entertain political leaders and other important guests.
- This could also be translated as, “elaborate meal” or “important feast” or “multi-course meal.”

Bible References:

Waiting

beg, beggar

Definition:

The term “beg” means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don’t know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A “beggar” is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, “plead” or “urgently ask” or “demand money” or “regularly ask for money.”

(See also: [plead](#), [pleading](#), [plea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[10-04]** God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs.
- **[29-08]** ”The king called the servant and said, ”You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me.”
- **[32-07]** The demons **begged** Jesus, “Please do not send us out of this region!” There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, “Please send us into the pigs instead!”
- **[32-10]** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus.
- **[35-11]** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.”
- **[44-01]** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

biblical time: day**Definition:**

The term “day” literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.”
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of “day” could include, “time” or “season” or “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [day of Yahweh](#), [judgment day](#), [last day](#), [last days](#), [latter days](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

biblical time: month

Definition:

The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about 29 days. In this system there are 12 or 13 months in a year. Despite the year being 12 or 13 months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into 12 months, with the length of each month ranging from 28 to 31 days.

Bible References:

Waiting

biblical time: year

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: [biblical time: month](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

blameless**Definition:**

The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as, “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

Bible References:

Waiting

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people ‘bless’ God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

from comment below: It is important to not define, focus on, or be confined by applications of the root word of “bless” that suggest primarily the flourishing or abundance of material things or physical wellness. Consider the extensive teachings in Scripture on God’s love, mercy and grace that is not only ancient, but current. Consider care, protection, and presence of God’s Spirit. And for us to bless God, we can offer thankfulness, appreciation, and understanding as we learn of and follow (obey) him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as, “to provide abundantly for” or “to be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as, “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like, “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as, “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as, “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-07]** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **[01-15]** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **[01-16]** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[04-04]** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **[04-07]** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **[07-03]** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **[08-05]** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

boast, boastful

Definition:

The term “boast” means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is “boastful” talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for “boasting in” their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead “boast” or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle, Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “boast” could include “brag” or “talk proudly” or “be proud.”
- The term “boastful” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “full of prideful talk” or “prideful” or “talking proudly about oneself.”
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as “take pride in” or “exalt in” or “be very glad about” or “give thanks to God about.”
- Some languages have two words for “pride”: one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in ones’ work, family, or country.

Translation Suggestions:

(See also: [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

breathe, breath

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “breathe” and “breath” are often used figuratively to refer to giving life or having life.

- The Bible teaches that God “breathed into” Adam the breath of life. It was at that point that Adam became a living soul.
- When Jesus breathed on the disciples and told them to “receive the Spirit,” he was probably literally breathing out air onto them to symbolize the Holy Spirit coming to them.
- Sometimes the terms “breathing” and “breathing out” are used to refer to speaking.
- The figurative expression “breath of God” or “breath of Yahweh” often refers to God’s wrath being poured out on rebellious or godless nations. It communicates his power.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression “breathed his last” is a figurative way of saying “he died.” It could also be translated as, “he took his last breath” or “he stopped breathing and died” or “he breathed in air one last time.”
- Describing the Scriptures as “God-breathed” means that God spoke or inspired the words of the Scriptures which human authors then wrote down. It is probably best, if possible, to translate “God-breathed” somewhat literally since it is difficult to communicate the exact meaning of this.
- If a literal translation of “God-breathed” is not acceptable, other ways to translate this could include, “inspired by God” or “authored by God” or “spoken by God.” It could also be said that “God breathed out the words of Scripture.”
- The expressions “put breath in” or “breathe life into” or “gives breath to” could be translated as, “cause to breathe” or “make alive again” or “enable them to live and breathe” or “give life to.”
- If possible, it is best to translate “breath of God” with the literal word that is used for “breath” in the language. If God cannot be said to have “breath,” this could be translated as, “God’s power” or “God’s speech.”
- The expression “catch my breath” or “get my breath” could be translated as, “relax in order to breathe more slowly” or “stop running in order to breathe normally.”
- The expression “is only a breath” means “lasts a very short time.”
- Similarly the expression “man is a single breath” means “people live a very short time” or “the lives of human beings are very short, like a single breath” or “compared to God, the life of a person seems as short as the time it takes to breathe in one breath of air.”

(See also: [Adam](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bronze**Definition:**

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [armor](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), [atonement](#), [atone](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

cast out, drive out, throw out

Definition:

To “cast out” or “drive out” someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term “cast” means the same thing as “throw.” To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, “cast out” or “cast away” someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “force out” or “send away” or “get rid of.”
- To “cast out demons” could be translated as “cause the demons to leave” or “drive the evil spirits out” or “expel the demons” or “command the demon to come out.”

(See also: [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [demon-possessed](#), [lots](#), [casting lots](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

chaff

Definition:

Chaff is a dry protective covering of a grain seed. The chaff is not good for food so people separate it from the seed and throw it away.

- Often, the chaff is separated from the seed by throwing the heads of grain up into the air. The wind blows the chaff away and the seed falls on the ground. This process is called “winnowing.”
- In the Bible, this term is also used figuratively to refer to evil people and evil, worthless things.

(See also: [grain](#), [wheat](#), [winnow](#), [sift](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Chaldea, Chaldean

Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as “Ur of the Chaldeans.”
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term “Chaldean” came to mean “Babylonian.”
- In the book of Daniel, the term “Chaldean” also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babylon](#), [Shinar](#), [Ur](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

chariot

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-10]** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.
- Rome, Romaning in his **chariot**.

chief**Definition:**

The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.” and “chief ruler.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as “chiefs” of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: [chief priests](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

clean, cleanse

Definition:

The term “clean” literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, it is often used figuratively to mean, “pure,” “holy,” or “free from sin.”

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unclean](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

command, to command, commandment

Definition:

The term “to command” means to order someone to do something. A “command” or “commandment” is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, “commandment” often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), [statutes](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

commander, command

Definition:

the term “commander” refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- To “command” an army means to lead and be in charge of the army.
- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate “commander” could include, “leader” or “captain” or “officer.”
- The term “to command” an army could be translated as “to lead” or “to be in charge of.”

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [centurion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

companion

Facts:

The term “companion” refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage.

- Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “friend” or “fellow traveler” or “supporting-person who goes with.”

Bible References:

Waiting

compassion, compassionate**Definition:**

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul’s letter to the Colossians, he tells them to “clothe themselves with compassion.” He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal meaning of “compassion” is “bowels of mercy.” This is an expression that means “mercy” or “pity.” Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “a deep caring for” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as, “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

Bible References:

Waiting

concubine**Definition:**

A concubine is a woman who is a secondary wife for a man who already has a wife. Usually a concubine is not legally married to the man.

- In the Old Testament, concubines were often female slaves.
- A concubine could be acquired by purchase, through military conquest, or in payment of a debt.
- For a king, having many concubines was a sign of power.often
- The New Testament teaches that the practice of having a concubine is against God's will.

Bible References:

Waiting

confess, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: [faith](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

confirm, confirmation

Definition:

The terms “confirm” and “confirmation” refer to stating or assuring that something is true or sure or trustworthy.

- In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will “confirm” his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to say that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

consecrate

Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or “to make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#), [sanctify](#), [sanctification](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

contempt, contemptible

Facts:

The term “contempt” refers to a deep disrespect and dishonor that is shown toward something or someone. Something that is greatly dishonorable is called “contemptible.”

- A person or behavior that shows open disrespect for God is also called “contemptible” and could be translated as “greatly disrespectful” or “completely dishonorable” or “deserving scorn.”
- To “hold in contempt” means to regard someone as having less value or to judge someone as less worthy than oneself.
- The following expressions have a similar meaning: “have contempt for” or “show contempt for” or “be in contempt of” or “treat with contempt.” These all mean to “strongly disrespect” or “strongly dishonor” something or someone by what is said and done.
- When King David sinned by committing adultery and murder, God said that David had “shown contempt for” God. It means he had greatly disrespected and dishonored God by doing that.

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

corrupt, corruption

Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to corrupt” could be translated as “to influence to do evil” or “to cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term corruption could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

counsel, counselor, advice, advisor

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, “to counsel” could be translated as “to advise” or “to make suggestions” or “to exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: [exhort](#), [exhortation](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

covenant

Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example when God established his covenant with mankind, promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

(See also: , [New Covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-09]** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **[05-04]** “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
- **[06-04]** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.

- [07-10] The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.”
- [13-02] God said to Moses and the people of Israel, ”If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- [13-04] Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- [15-13] Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.

creature**Definition:**

The term “creature” refers to all the living beings that God created, both humans and animals.

- The prophet Ezekiel described seeing “living creatures” in his vision of the glory of God. He did not know what they were, so he gave them this very general label.
- Note that the term “creation” has a different meaning since it includes everything God created, both living and nonliving things (such as land, water, and stars). The term “creature” only includes living things.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “creature” could be translated as, “being” or “living being” or “created being.”
- The plural, “creatures” could be translated as “all living things” or “people and animals” or “animals” or “human beings.”

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

curse, cursed

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as, “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as, “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as, “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- “Cursed be the day I was born” could also be translated as, “I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-09] God said to the snake, “You are **cursed!**”
- [02-11] “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- [04-04] “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- [39-07] Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- [50-16] Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

cut off**Definition:**

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, “to cut off” could be translated as, “to destroy” or “to send away” or “to separate from” or “to destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

Waiting

Cyrus

Facts:

Cyrus was a Persian king who founded the Persian empire in about 550 BC, through military conquest. In history he was also known as Cyrus the Great.

- King Cyrus conquered the city of Babylon, which led to the release of the Israelites who had been kept in exile there.
- Cyrus was known for his tolerant attitude toward the people of the nations he conquered. His kindness toward the Jews led to the rebuilding of the Jerusalem temple after the exile.
- Cyrus was reigning during the time when Daniel, Ezra, and Nehemiah were living.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Daniel](#), [Darius](#), [Ezra](#), [Nehemiah](#), [Persia](#), [Persians](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Daniel

Facts:

Daniel was an Israelite prophet who as a young man was taken captive by the Babylonian king Nebuchadnezzar around 600 BC.

- This was during the time that many other Israelites from Judah were held captive in Babylon for 70 years.
- Daniel was given the Babylonian name Belteshazzar.
- Daniel was an honorable and righteous young man who obeyed God.
- God enabled Daniel to interpret several dreams or visions for the Babylonian kings.
- Because of this ability and because of his honorable character, Daniel was given a high leadership position in the Babylonian empire.
- Many years later, Daniel's enemies tricked the Babylonian king Darius into making a law forbidding the worship of anyone except the king. Daniel continued to pray to God, so he was arrested and thrown into a den of lions. But God rescued him and he was not harmed at all.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Darius

Facts:

Darius was the name of several kings of Persia. It is possible that “Darius” was a title rather than a name.

- “Darius the Mede” was the king who was tricked into having the prophet Daniel thrown into a lion’s den as punishment for worshiping God.
- “Darius the Persian” helped facilitate the reconstruction of the temple in Jerusalem during the time of Ezra and Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Persia](#), [Persians](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Daniel](#), [Ezra](#), [Nehemiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression, “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

death, die, dead

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression that refers to death in the target language.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression, “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as, “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression, “put to death” could also be translated as, “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-11]** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **[02-11]** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **[07-10]** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **[37-05]** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **[40-08]** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[43-07]** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **[48-02]** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **[50-17]** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.
-

deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term, “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms, “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as, “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as, “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated by “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See: [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish review}}

decree

Definition:

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
- To decree something means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as, "to order" or "to command" or "to formally require" or "to publicly make a law."
- Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [declare](#), [declaration](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

dedicate, dedication

Definition:

To dedicate is to set apart or commit something for a special purpose or function.

- David dedicated his gold and silver to the Lord.
- Often the word “dedication” refers to a formal event or ceremony to set apart something for a special purpose.
- The dedication of the altar included offering a sacrifice to God.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in a dedication of Jerusalem’s repaired walls with a renewed promise to serve only Yahweh and to take care of his city. This event included giving thanks to God with musical instruments and singing.
- The term “dedicate” could also be translated as “specially assign a special purpose” or “commit something to be used for a specific use” or “commit someone to do a special task.”

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

descendant, descended from

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in, “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as, “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Noah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-09] ”The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- [04-09] ”I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- [05-10] ”Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- [17-07] ”Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**”
- [18-13] The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- [21-04] God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- [48-13] God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

desolate, desolation

Definition:

The terms “desolate” and “desolation” refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term “desolate” describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- The term “desolation” is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”

(See also: [desert](#), [wilderness](#), [devastate](#), [devastation](#), [ruin](#), [ruins](#), [waste](#), [wasteland](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

devastate, devastation**Definition:**

The term “devastated” or “devastation” refers to having one’s property or land ruined or destroyed. It also often includes destroying or capturing the people living on that land.

- This refers to a very severe and complete destruction.
- For example, the city of Sodom was devastated by God as punishment for the sins of the people living there.
- The term “devastation” can also include causing great emotional grief resulting from the punishment or destruction.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “devastate” could be translated as “completely destroy” or “completely ruin.”
- Depending on the context, “devastation” could be translated as “complete destruction” or “total ruin” or “overwhelming grief” or “disaster.”

Bible References:

Waiting

devour

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

(See also: other)

Bible References:

Waiting

divine

Definition:

The term “divine” refers to anything pertaining to God.

- Some ways this term is used include, “divine authority,” “divine judgment,” “divine nature,” “divine power,” and “divine glory.”
- In one passage in the Bible, the term “divine” is used to describe something about a false deity.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “divine” could include, “God’s” or “from God” or “pertaining to God” or “characterized by God.”
- For example, “divine authority” could be translated as “God’s authority” or “authority that comes from God.”
- The phrase “divine glory” could be translated as “God’s glory” or “the glory that God has” or “glory that comes from God.”
- Some translations may prefer to use a different word when describing something that pertains to a false god.

(See also: [authority](#), [en:obe:kt:falsegod], [glory](#), [glorious](#), [God](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

dominion

Definition:

The term “dominion” refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan’s dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ’s death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other Ways to translate this term could include “authority” or “power” or “control.”
- The phrase “have dominion over” could be translated as, “rule over” or “manage.”

(See: [authority](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

dream

Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-02]** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- **[08-07]** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."
- **[16-11]** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- **[23-01]** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

eagle

Definition:

An eagle is a very large, powerful bird of prey that eats small animals such as fish, mice, snakes, and chickens.

- The Bible compares the speed and strength of an army to how fast and suddenly an eagle swoops down to catch its prey.
- Isaiah states that those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle does. This is figurative language used to describe the freedom and strength that comes from trusting and obeying God.
- In the book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar's hair length was compared to the length of an eagle's feathers, which can be more than 50 centimeters long.

(See: [Daniel](#), [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

earth, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- The expressions, “let the earth be glad” and “He will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as, “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as, “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include, “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Edom, Edomite, Idumea

Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as “Edom” and later, “Idumea.” The “Edomites” were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it “Idumea.”
- The name “Edom” means “red,” which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [birthright](#), [Esau](#), [Obadiah](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Herod the Great](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Nile River](#), [River of Egypt](#), [patriarchs](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-04]** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **[08-08]** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **[08-11]** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **[08-14]** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **[09-01]** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Elam

Facts:

Elam was a son of Shem and a grandson of Noah.

- The descendants of Elam were called “Elamites” and they lived in a region was also called “Elam.”
- The region of Elam was located to the southeast of the Tigris River, in what is now western Iran.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Noah](#), [Shem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

everlasting, eternal, eternity

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include, “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include, “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [forever](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **[28-01]** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **[28-10]** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

Ethiopia, Ethiopian

Facts:

Ethiopia is a country in Africa located just south of Egypt, bordered by the Nile River to the west and by the Red Sea to the east. A person from Ethiopia is an “Ethiopian.”

- Ancient Ethiopia was located south of Egypt and included land that is now part of several modern-day African countries, such as Sudan, modern Ethiopia, Somalia, Kenya, Uganda, Central African Republic, and Chad.
- In the Bible, Ethiopia is sometimes called “Cush” or “Nubia.”
- The countries of Ethiopia (‘Cush’) and Egypt are often mentioned together in the Bible, perhaps because they were located next to each other and their people may have had some of the same ancestors.
- God sent Philip the evangelist to a desert where he shared the good news about Jesus with an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Cush](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [eunuch](#), [Philip, the evangelist](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

evil, wicked, wickedness

Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering or being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral”
- Other ways to translate these could include, “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [righteous](#), demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **[03-01]** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **[04-02]** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **[08-12]** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **[17-01]** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **[18-11]** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.

- [29-08] The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- [45-02] They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

exile, the Exile

Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian Exile” (or “the Exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to exile” could also be translated as, “to send away” or “to force out” or “to banish.”
- The term “the Exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include, “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

face

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means, “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, “to face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide: to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine that affected many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression, “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term “to face” could be translated as “to turn toward” or “to look at directly” or “to look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as, “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression, “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression, “hide his face from” could be translated as, “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as, “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression, “say it to their face” could be translated as, “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression, “on the face of the land” could also be translated as, “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

Waiting

faithful, faithfulness

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means, “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include, “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-05]** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **[14-12]** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **[15-13]** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **[17-09]** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **[18-04]** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon’s death.
- **[35-12]** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **[49-17]** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **[50-04]** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

false god, foreign god, god, goddess

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), [Asherah](#), [Asherah poles](#), [Ashtoreth](#), [Baal](#), [Molech](#), [Moloch](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[10-02]** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt’s **gods**.
- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**.”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **[18-13]** But most of Judah’s kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

fast

Definition:

The term “to fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb “to fast” can also be translated as “to refrain from eating” or “to not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: [Jewish leaders](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [religious leaders](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-01]** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **[34-08]**”For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **[46-10]** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” refers to doing something to benefit someone who is regarded positively. Something that is “favorable” is positive, approving, or beneficial.

- The term “favoritism” means to act favorably toward some people but not others. Often favoritism is The term “favoritism” means acting favorably toward some people, but not others. shown toward people who are rich or are considered
- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” means that someone is approved of by someone else.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include, “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as, “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite” which means “the one who is preferred or loved best.”

“find favor” “increased in favor” “won the favor of”

Bible References:

Waiting

fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh

Definition:

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” and related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence, “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as, “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as, “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” would be used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), [wonder](#), [amazed](#), [astonished](#), [awe](#), [awesome](#), [Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

feast

Definition:

The term “feast” refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action “to feast” means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term “to feast” could also be translated as “to eat lavishly” or “to celebrate by eating lots of food” or “to eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as, “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: [festival](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

festival

Definition:

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for “festival” in the Old Testament literally means “appointed time.”
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word “feast” is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
 - Passover
 - Festival of Unleavened Bread
 - Firstfruits
 - Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
 - Festival of Trumpets
 - Day of Atonement
 - Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: [feast](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fire

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as, “cause you to experience suffering in order to purify you.”

(See also: [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

flood

Definition:

The term “flood” literally refers to a large amount of water that completely covers over the land.

- This term is also used figuratively to refer to an overwhelming amount of something, especially something that happens suddenly.
- In Noah’s time, people had become so evil that God caused a worldwide flood to come over the entire surface of the earth, even covering the mountaintops. Everyone who was not in the boat with Noah drowned. All other floods cover a much smaller land area.
- This term can also be an action as in, “the land was flooded by river water.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the literal meaning of “flood” could include, “an overflowing of water” or “large amounts of water.”
- The figurative comparison, “like a flood” could keep the literal term, or a substitute term could be used that refers to something that has a flowing aspect to it, such as a river.
- For the expression “like a flood of water” where water is already mentioned, the word “flood” could be translated as “an overwhelming amount” or “an overflowing.”
- This term can be used as a metaphor as in, “do not let the flood sweep over me,” which means “do not let these overwhelming disasters happen to me” or “don’t let me be devastated by disasters” or “don’t let your anger devastate me.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- The figurative expression, “I flood my bed with tears” could be translated as “my tears soak my bed with water like a flood.”

(See also: [ark](#), [Noah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

flute, pipe

Definition:

In Bible times, pipes were musical instruments made of bone or wood with holes to allow the sound to come out. A flute was a kind of pipe.

- Most pipes had reeds made out of a kind of thick grass that vibrated as air was blown over it.
- A pipe without any reeds was often called a “flute.”
- A shepherd played a pipe to calm his flocks of sheep.
- Pipes and flutes were used for playing sad or joyful music.

(See also: [flock](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

forever

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean, “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referring to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase, “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase, “forever and ever” could also be translated as, “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as, “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of mine will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

forgive, forgiveness

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against a person who did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean, “cancel” as in the expression, “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as, “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”

(See: [guilt](#), [guilty](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [07-10] But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- [13-15] Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- [17-13] David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- [21-05] In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- [29-01] One day Peter asked Jesus, “Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?”
- [29-08] I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- [38-05] Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

forsake, forsaken, forsook**Definition:**

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, it means they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, it means he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used as past tense as in “he has forsaken you” or to refer to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- The project language may find it more clear to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text is talking about forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

Waiting

fulfill

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as, “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill” as in “fulfill your ministry” could include, “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [minister](#), [ministry](#), [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[24-04]** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **[40-03]** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **[42-07]** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **[43-05]** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **[43-07]** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **[44-05]** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Gabriel

Facts:

Gabriel is the name of one of God's angels. He is mentioned by name several times, in both the Old and New Testaments.

- God sent Gabriel to tell the prophet Daniel the meaning of a vision he had seen.
- Another time, while Daniel was praying, the angel Gabriel flew to him and prophesied about what would happen in the future. Daniel described him as a “man.”
- In the New Testament it is recorded that Gabriel came to Zechariah to prophesy that his aged wife Elizabeth would have a son, John.
- Six months after that, Gabriel was sent to Mary to tell her that God would miraculously enable her to conceive a child who would be the “Son of God.” Gabriel told Mary to name her son, “Jesus.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [Daniel](#), [Elizabeth](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [Mary, the mother of Jesus](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [Zechariah \(NT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

generation

UNDER REVIEW

Definition:

The term “generation” refers to a group of people who were all born around the same time period.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as, “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as, “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as, “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

glorify

Definition:

The term “glorify” means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means “give glory.”

- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
- They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
- When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son’s perfection, splendor, and greatness.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as, “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: [exalt](#), [exaltation](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

glory, glorious

Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression “to glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include, “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression, “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as, “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”

(See also: [glorify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [25-06] Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- [37-01] When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- [37-08] Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

goat, kid

Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a “kid.”

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
 - Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
 - The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
 - A sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from the herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of their tendency to wander away from the one taking care of them.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second live goat and send it into the desert as a symbol of the animal bearing the people’s sins.

(See also: [flock](#), [herd](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh” which means, “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include, “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be, “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use two different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase, “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as, “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [idol](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Yahweh](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-01]**God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- [01-15]**God** made man and woman in his own image.
- [05-03]"I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- [09-14]**God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- [10-02] Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- [22-07] You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- [24-09] There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [25-07]"Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- [28-01]"There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- [49-09] But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- [50-16] But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

gold

Definition:

Gold is a yellow-colored high-quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included ear rings and other jewelry, idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

governor, govern, proconsul, government

Definition:

A “governor” is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. The word “govern” means to guide, lead, or manage people.

- The term “proconsul” was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” is made up of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as, “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for king or emperor, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as, “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [province](#), [provincial](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Greece

Facts:

During New Testament times, Greece was a province in the Roman Empire.

- Like the modern-day country of Greece, it was located on a peninsula that is bordered by the Mediterranean Sea, Aegean Sea, and Ionian Sea.
- The apostle Paul visited several cities in Greece and established churches in the cities of Corinth, Thessalonica, and Phillipi and probably others.
- People who are from Greece are called “Greeks” and their language is “Greek.” People from other Roman provinces also spoke Greek, including many Jews.
- Sometimes the term “Greek” is used to refer to a Gentile.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Corinth](#), [Corinthians](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [Grecian](#), [Hellenistic](#), [Hebrew](#), [Phillipi](#), [Thessalonica](#), [Thessalonians](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Hananiah

Facts:

Hananiah was the name of several different men in the Old Testament.

- One Hananiah was an Israelite captive in Babylon whose name was changed to “Shadrach.”
- He was given a position as a royal servant due to his excellent character and abilities.
- Once Hananiah (Shadrach) and two other Israelite young men were thrown into a fire in a furnace because they refused to worship the Babylonian king. God showed his power by protecting them from being harmed.
- Another man named Hananiah was listed as a descendant of King Solomon.
- A different Hananiah was a false prophet during the time of the prophet Jeremiah.
- One man named Hananiah was a priest who helped lead a celebration during the time of Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Azariah](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Daniel](#), [false prophet](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Mishael](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

hand, right hand, to hand over

Definition:

There are several figurative ways that “hand” is used in the Bible:

- To “hand” something to someone means to put something into that person’s hands.
- The term “hand” is often used in reference to God’s power and action, such as when God says, “Has not my hand made all these things?” (See: **Metonymy**)
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term “laying on of hands” refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service or to pray for healing.
- Some other figurative uses of “hand” include:
 - To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
 - To “save from the hand of” means to stop someone from harming someone else.
 - To be “close at hand” means to be “nearby.”
 - The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
 - The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, “by the hand of the Lord” means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression, “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When “hand” refers to the person, such as in “the hand of God did this,” it could be translated as “God did this.”
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as, “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [captive](#), [captivity](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

harp

Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, usually having a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul to soothe the king's troubled spirit.

(See also: [David](#), [fir](#), [psalm](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

head

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “head” is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in, “you have made me the head over nations.” This could be translated as, “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over...”
- Jesus is called the “head of the church.” Just as a person’s head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his “body,” the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the “head” or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression, “no razor will ever touch his head” means “ he will never cut or shave his hair.”
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something as in the “head of the street.”
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for “head” is when it is used to represent the whole person as in, “this gray head” referring to an elderly person or “the head of Joseph” referring to Joseph. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as, “authority” or “the one who leads and directs” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “head of” can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person’s name. For example, “the head of Joseph” could simply be translated as “Joseph.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “beginning” or “source” or “ruler” or “leader” or “top.”

(See: [grain](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

- [Prev chunk: publish-current](#)

- This chunk : review-publish | publish-current
- Next chunk: publish-current

heart

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression, “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. They have been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this nonfiguratively with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as, “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include, “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See: [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-02] They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- [14-11] He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- [42-11] Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

holy, holiness

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- Since God is holy, people cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because they are mere human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include, “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [consecratesanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [set apart](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-16]** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[09-12]** “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **[13-02]** “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **[13-05]** “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **[22-05]** “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **[50-02]** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

holy place, most holy place

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “the holy place” and “the most holy place” refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

- The “holy place” was the first room and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special “bread of the presence” on it.
- The “most holy place” was the second, innermost room and it contained the ark of the covenant.
- A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
- The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
- Sometimes “holy place” refers to the both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It can also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “holy place” could also be translated as, “room set apart for God” or “special room for meeting God” or “place reserved for God.”
- The term, “most holy place” could be translated as, “room that is the most set apart for God” or “most special room for meeting God.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression “a holy place” could include, “a consecrated place” or “a place that God has set apart” or “a place in the temple complex, which is holy” or “a courtyard of God’s holy temple.”

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [bread](#), [consecrate](#), [courtyard](#), [court](#), [curtain](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

honor, to honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God also instructs Christians to honor others, but not to try to get honor for themselves.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents, which includes respect and obedience.
- the terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Honor for God includes thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include, “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term “to honor” could be translated as “to show special respect to” or “to cause to be praised” or “to show high regard for” or “to highly value.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#), [praise](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

horsemen

Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who are actually riding on the horses.
- The Israelites believed that using horses in battle placed too much emphasis on their own strength rather than on Yahweh, so they did not use a lot of horsemen.
- This term could also be translated as, “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: [chariot](#), [horse](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

house of God, Yahweh's house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as, "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as, "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people.")
- The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

humble, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand our weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- If a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as, “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-02] David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- [34-10] ”God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

idol, idolatrous

Definition:

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-05]** ”Do not make **idols** or worship them, because I, Yahweh, am a jealous God.”
- **[13-12]** Aaron made a golden **idol** in the shape of a calf. The people began to wildly worship the **idol** and make sacrifices to it!
- **[14-03]** ”You must completely destroy all of their **idols**. If you do not obey me, you will worship their **idols** instead of me.”
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped **idols**. This kind of worship often included sexual immorality and sometimes even child sacrifice.
- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshipping **idols** and to start showing justice and mercy to others.

image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure**Definition:**

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [God](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image of God](#), [image](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

incense

Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that are burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made from mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include, “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [frankincense](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [transgress](#), [transgression](#), [trespass](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

interpret, interpretation

Facts:

The terms “interpret” and “interpretation” refer to understanding and explaining the meaning of something that is not clear.

- Often in the Bible these terms are used in connection with explaining the meaning of dreams or visions.
- When the king of Babylon had some confusing dreams, God helped Daniel to interpret them and to explain their meanings.
- The “interpretation” of the dream is the “explanation” of the meaning of the dream.
- In the Old Testament, God sometimes used dreams to reveal to people what would happen in the future. So the interpretations of those dreams were prophecies.
- The term “interpret” can also refer to figuring out the meaning of other things, such as figuring out what the weather will be like based on how cold or hot it is, how windy it is, and what the sky looks like.
- Ways to translate the term “interpret” could include, “figure out the meaning of” or “explain” or “give the meaning of.”
- The term “interpretation” could also be translated as, “explanation” or “meaning.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Daniel](#), [dream](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means, “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel,” the “nation of Israel,” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel was made up of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as, “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-15]** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **[09-03]** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **[09-05]** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **[10-01]** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **[14-12]** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **[15-09]** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **[15-12]** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **[16-16]** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols.
- **[43-06]** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Jehoiakim

Facts:

Jehoiakim was an evil king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah, beginning around 608 B.C. He was King Josiah's son. His name was originally Eliakim.

- The Egyptian pharaoh Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim and made him king of Judah.
- Necho forced Jehoiakim to pay high taxes to Egypt.
- When Judah was later invaded by King Nebuchadnezzar, Jehoiakim was among those who were captured and taken to Babylon.
- Jehoiakim was an evil king who led Judah away from Yahweh. Jeremiah the prophet prophesied against him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Eliakim](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jeremiah

Facts:

Jeremiah was a prophet of God in the kingdom of Judah. The Old Testament book of Jeremiah contains his prophecies.

- Like most of the prophets, Jeremiah often had to warn the people of Israel that God was going to punish them for their sins.
- Jeremiah prophesied that the Babylonians would capture Jerusalem, which made some of the people of Judah angry. So they put him in a deep, dry well and left him there to die. But the king of Judah ordered his servants to rescue Jeremiah from the well.
- Jeremiah wrote that he wished his eyes could be a “fountain of tears,” to express his deep sadness over the rebellion and sufferings of his people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [rebel](#), [rebellious](#), [rebellion](#), [suffer](#), [suffering](#), [well](#), [cistern](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-17]** Once, the prophet **Jeremiah** was put into a dry well and left there to die. He sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull **Jeremiah** out of the well before he died.
- **[21-05]** Through the prophet **Jeremiah**, God promised that he would make a New Covenant, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai.

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of present-day Israel.

- The name, “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem”, “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it was located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#), [Mount Zion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-05] David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- [18-02] In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- [20-07] They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- [20-12] So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- [38-01] About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- [38-02] After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- [42-08] ”It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”

- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Jew, Jewish, Jews

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson, Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.
- Often the phrase "the Jews" refers to the leaders of the Jews, not all the Jewish people. In those contexts, some translations add "leaders of" to make this clear.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [religious leaders](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-11]** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **[20-12]** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **[37-10]** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **[37-11]** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **[40-02]** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **[46-06]** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern part of the nation.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#), [Jews](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Judea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include, “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as, “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), [judgment day](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.

- **[39-04]** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **[50-14]** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

judge

Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

judgment day

Definition:

The term, “judgment day” refers to a future time when God will judge every person.

- God has made his Son, Jesus Christ, the judge for all people.
- On judgment day, Christ will judge people on the basis of his righteous character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “judgment time” since it could refer to more than one day.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “the end time when God will judge all people.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is the name of a special day or time: “Judgment Day” or “Judgment Time.”

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [hell](#), [lake of fire](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

just, justice, justly

Definition:

These terms refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include, "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as, "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as, "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as, "righteous" or "upright."

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-09] David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- [18-13] Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- [19-16] They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as, “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be, “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase, “kingdom of light” could be translated as, “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-02]** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **[18-04]** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.

- **[18-07]** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **[18-08]** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

king

Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king is usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king dies, it is usually his oldest son who becomes the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” may be used to refer to someone who is not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as, “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as, “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **[16-18]** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **[17-05]** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **[21-06]** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **[48-14]** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

know, knowledge, make known

Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include, “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know” depending on whether it refers to knowing facts or to knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as, “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as, “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lampstand

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as, “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as, “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: [bronze](#), [gold](#), [lamp](#), [light](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

last day, last days, latter days

Definition:

The term “last days” or “latter days” refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- This time period will be an unknown length of time.
- The “last days” are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term, “last days” can also be translated as “final days” or “end times.”
- In some contexts, this could be translated as, “end of the world” or “when this world ends.”

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [day of Yahweh](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

law, principle

Definition:

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term, “law of Moses” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: [law, principle](#) , [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites.
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament.
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
 - all of God’s instructions and will.
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”).

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as, “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include: “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions”
- The phrase, “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as, “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [instruction](#), [Moses](#), [Ten Commandments](#), [lawful](#), [lawfully](#), [unlawful](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.

- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **[15-13]** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **[16-01]** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.
- **[21-05]** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **[27-01]** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **[28-01]** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

learned men, astrologers

Definition:

In Matthew's account of the birth of Christ, these "learned" or "educated" men were the "wise men" who brought gifts to Jesus in Bethlehem sometime after his birth there. They may have been "astrologers," which are people who study the stars.

- These men traveled a long way from a country far to the east of Israel. It is not known exactly where they came from or who they were. But they were obviously scholars who had studied the stars.
- They may have been descendants of the wise men who served the Babylonian kings in Daniel's time and who were trained in many things, including studying the stars and interpreting dreams.
- Traditionally it has been said that there were three wise men or learned men because of the three gifts they brought to Jesus. However, the Bible text does not say how many there were.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Daniel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

leopard

Facts:

A leopard is a large, cat-like, wild animal that is brown with black spots.

- A leopard is a kind of animal which catches other animals and eats them.
- In the Bible, the suddenness of disaster is compared to a leopard, which pounces suddenly on its prey.
- The prophet Daniel and the apostle John tell about visions in which they saw a beast that looked like a leopard.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [beast](#), [Daniel](#), [prey](#), [to prey on](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person, as in, “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living, as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive as in, “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus and God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as, “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as, “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as, “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as, “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as, “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-10] So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- [03-01] After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- [08-13] When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- [17-09] However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- [27-01] One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- [37-05] Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- [44-05] "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

light

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light,” and there is no darkness in him.
- Light and darkness are completely opposite. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he is “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world, by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

like, likeness

Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: [Simile](#))
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression, “the likeness of” could be translated as, “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression, “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as, “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or “to be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as “to be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [perish](#), [perishing](#), [perishable](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lion

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, wild animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown in color.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can also be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions who tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion with his bare hands.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), [leopard](#), [Samson](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lord, master, sir

Definition:

The term “lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated as “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It could also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, it could be translated as “master” if the context shows it means “religious teacher.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is written as “Lord” (capitalized).

(See also: [Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [25-05] But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- [25-07] Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- [26-03] This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.
- [27-02] The law expert replied that God’s law says, “Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- [31-05] Then Peter said to Jesus, “**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- [43-09] “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!”
- [47-03] By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- [47-11] Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved.”
-

Lord

Facts:

The term “Lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. When it is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note however that when used as a form of addressing someone or at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as, “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as, “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has, “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title, “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme ruler.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

love

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” which some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others, even when it doesn’t benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, it involves actions that show that someone is thinking of what will cause the other person to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- It can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

4. In the figurative expression, “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God’s choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn’t given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”

- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [save](#), [safe](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [27-02] The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- [33-08] “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- [36-05] As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- [39-10] “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- [47-01] She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- [48-01] When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- [49-03] He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- [49-04] He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- [49-07] Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- [49-09] But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- [49-13] God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

lute, lyre

Definition:

The lute and the lyre are small, stringed, musical instruments that were used by the Israelites to worship God.

- A lyre looks like a small harp, with an open frame that the strings are strung across.
- A lute is very similar to a modern day acoustic guitar, having a wooden sound box and an extended neck on which the strings are strung.
- To play a lute or a lyre, certain strings are held down with the fingers of one hand while other strings are plucked or strummed with the other hand.
- The lute, lyre, and harp are all played by strumming or plucking the strings.
- The number of strings varied, but the Old Testament specifically mentions instruments that had ten strings.

(See also: [harp](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

magic, magician

Definition:

The term “magic” refers to the practice of using supernatural power that does not come from God. A “magician” is someone who practices magic.

- In Egypt, when God did miraculous things through Moses, the Egyptian pharaoh’s magicians were able to do some of the same things, but their power did not come from God.
- Magic often involves casting spells or repeating certain words in order to make something supernatural happen.
- God commands his people to not do any of these practices of magic or divination.
- A sorcerer is a type of magician, usually one who uses magic to do harm to others.

(See also: [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Pharaoh](#), [king of Egypt](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [sorcery](#), [sorcerer](#), [witchcraft](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

magistrate, magistrates

Definition:

A magistrate is an appointed official who acts as a judge and decides matters of law.

- In Bible times, a magistrate also settled disputes between people.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “ruling judge” or “legal officer” or “city leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

majesty

Definition:

The term “majesty” refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

- In the Bible, “majesty” frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
- “Your Majesty” is a way of addressing a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as, “kingly greatness” or “royal splendor.”
- “Your Majesty” could be translated as something like “your Highness” or “your Excellency” or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: [king](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

manager, steward

Definition:

The term “manager” or “steward” in the Bible refers to a servant who was entrusted with taking care of his master’s property and business dealings.

- A steward was given a lot of responsibility, which included supervising the work of other servants.
- The term “manager” is a more modern term for a steward. Both terms refer to someone who manages practical affairs for someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as, “supervisor” or “household organizer” or “servant who manages” or “person who organizes.”

(See also: [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Medes, Media

Facts:

Media was an ancient empire located east of Assyria and Babylonia, and north of Elam and Persia. The people who lived in the empire of Media were called “Medes.”

- The Media empire covered parts of what are present-day Turkey, Iran, Syria, Iraq and Afghanistan.
- The Medes were closely associated with the Persians and the two empires joined forces to conquer the Babylonian empire.
- Babylonia was invaded by Darius the Mede during the time that the prophet Daniel was living there.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Cyrus](#), [Daniel](#), [Darius](#), [Elam](#), [Persia](#), [Persians](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as, “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as, “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as, “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See: [compassion](#), [compassionate](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **[19-17]** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **[20-12]** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **[27-11]** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **[32-11]** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”

- **[34-09]**”But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

messenger

Facts:

The term, “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Michael

Facts:

Michael is the chief of all God's holy, obedient angels. He is the only angel who is specifically referred to as the "archangel" of God.

- The term "archangel" literally means "chief angel" or "ruling angel."
- Michael is a warrior who fights against God's enemies and protects God's people.
- He led the Israelites in fighting against the Persian army. In the end times he will lead the armies of Israel in the final battle against the forces of evil, as foretold in Daniel.
- There are also several men in the Bible with the name Michael. Several men are identified as being the "son of Michael"

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [Daniel](#), [messenger](#), [Persia](#), [Persians](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mighty, might

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase, “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase, “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term, “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as, “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as, “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [strength](#), [strengthen](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mind

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression, “keep in mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression, “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as, “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression, “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as, “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

minister, ministry

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “minister” and “ministry” refer to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs. The term “minister” can also refer to a person who serves people in this way.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- In the New Testament, a “minister” of the gospel was someone who taught other people the message of salvation through faith in Jesus. Sometimes a minister is called a “servant.”
- The job of ministering to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, “to minister” could also be translated as “to serve” or “to care for” or “to meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as “to serve” or “to work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), [service](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include, “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [powers](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [16-08] Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- [19-14] God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- [37-10] Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- [43-06] "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."
- [49-02] Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Mishael

Facts:

Mishael is the name of three men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Mishael was a cousin of Aaron. When two of Aaron's sons were killed by God after they offered incense in a way that did not follow what God had told them to do, Mishael and his brother were given the task of carrying the dead bodies outside the Israelite camp.
- Another man named Mishael stood beside Ezra when he publicly read the rediscovered law.
- During the time when the people of Israel were in exile in Babylon, a young man named Mishael was also captured and forced to live in Babylon. The Babylonians gave him the name, "Meshach." He, along with his companions, Azariah (Shadrach) and Hananiah (Abednego), refused to worship the king's statue and were thrown into a fiery furnace.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aaron](#), [Azariah](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Daniel](#), [Hananiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Moab, Moabite, Moabites

Facts:

Moab was the son of Lot's elder daughter. It also became the name of the land where he and his family lived. The term "Moabite" refers to a person who is descended from Moab or who lives in the country of Moab.

- The country of Moab was located east of the Salt Sea.
- Moab was southeast from the town of Bethlehem where Naomi's family lived.
- The people in Bethlehem called Ruth a "Moabites" because she was a woman from the country of Moab. This term could also be translated as, "Moabite woman" or "woman from Moab."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Judea](#), [Lot](#), [Ruth](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Most High

Facts:

The term, “Most High” is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority.

- The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of “Sovereign” or “Supreme.”
- The word “high” in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can also be translated as, “Most High God” or “Most Supreme being” or “God Most High” or “Greatest One” or “Supreme One” or “God, who is Greater than all.”
- If a word like “high” is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: [God](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mourn, mourning

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively, to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mystery, hidden truth

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “mystery” refers to something unknown or difficult to understand that God is now explaining.

- The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
- One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
- This term could also be translated as “secret” or “hidden things” or “something unknown.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [Gentile](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#), [Jews](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

name

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” is used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” can refer to a person’s reputation, as in, “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” can also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” means speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone can refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like, “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as, “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression, “make a name for ourselves” could be translated, “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression, “call his name” could be translated as, “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression, “those who love your name” could be translated as, “those who love you.”
- The expression, “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- The term “nation” usually includes the idea of a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” can be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” is used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” is also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as, “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [Grecian](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Nebuchadnezzar

Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. This "Babylonian Exile" lasted 70 years.
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted dreams that King Nebuchadnezzar had.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Meshael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [arrogant](#), [Azariah](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Hananiah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Mishael](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent **Nebuchadnezzar**, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- **[20-06]** The king of Judah agreed to be **Nebuchadnezzar's** servant and pay him a lot of money every year.
- **[20-08]** To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, **Nebuchadnezzar's** soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind.
- **[20-09]** **Nebuchadnezzar** and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

noble, nobleman

Definition:

The term “noble” refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A “nobleman” is a person who belongs to a higher political or social class.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term “nobleman” could also be translated by, “king’s official” or “government officer” or “man of noble birth.”

Bible References:

Waiting

oath, swear, swear by

Definition:

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. An oath involves a commitment to being faithful and truthful.

- Often in a court of law, a witness gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term “swear” means to speak an oath.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together as in, “swear an oath.”
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day use of the word “swear” means to use foul language. This is not its meaning in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- “To swear” could be translated by “to formally promise” or “to pledge” or “to commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include, “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [covenant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

obey, obedient, obedience

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes the character of someone who obeys. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in, “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate this term could include a word or phrase that means, “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as, “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [kingdom](#), [law](#), [principle](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-04]** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **[05-06]** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **[05-10]** “Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **[11-06]** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **[13-07]** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

oil**Definition:**

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that is taken from certain plants or fruits. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

oppress, oppression, oppressor

Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated by, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include, “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ox, oxen**Definition:**

An “ox” refers to a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen are depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Oxen working together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase “to be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [yoke](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

palace

Definition:

The term “palace” refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: [courtyard](#), [court](#), [high priest](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

peace, peaceful

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [15-06] God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- [15-12] Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- [16-03] Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- [21-13] He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- [48-14] David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

people group, peoples, the people, a people

Definition:

The term “peoples” or “people groups” refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart “a people” for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as “your people” can mean “your people group” or “your family” or “your relatives.”
- The term “peoples” is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase, “the people of” could be translated as, “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as, “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as, “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[14-02]** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **[21-02]** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **[42-08]** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **[42-10]** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **[48-11]** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **[50-03]** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

people of God, my people

Definition:

The term, “people of God” refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says, “my people” he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God’s people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, “people of God” especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- Other ways to translate “my people” when God says it, could include, “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Persia, Persians

Definition:

Persia was a country that also became a powerful empire founded by Cyrus the Great in 550 BC. The country of Persia was located southeast of Babylonia and Assyria in a region that is now the modern-day country of Iran.

- The people of Persia were called “Persians.”
- Under King Cyrus’ decree, the Jews were freed from their captivity in Babylon and allowed to go home, and the temple in Jerusalem was rebuilt, with funds provided by the Persian Empire.
- King Artaxerxes was the ruler of the Persian Empire when Ezra and Nehemiah went back to Jerusalem to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- Esther became a queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.

(See also: [Ahasuerus](#), [Artaxerxes](#), [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Cyrus](#), [Esther](#), [Ezra](#), [Nehemiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

plead, pleading, plea

Facts:

The terms “plead” and “pleading” refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A “plea” is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Other ways to translate this could include “beg” or “implore” or “urgently ask.”
- The term “plea” could also be translated as “urgent request” or “strong urging.”
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.

Bible References:

Waiting

possess, possession

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as, “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The terms “possess” could also be translated as, “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase, “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as, “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

power, powers

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include, “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as, “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[22-05]** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[32-15]** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **[43-06]** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **[44-08]** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

praise

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term “to praise” could also be translated as, “to speak well of” or “to highly honor with words” or “to say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as, “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **[17-08]** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **[22-07]** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **[43-13]** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **[47-08]** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. This term is also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [06-05] Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- [13-12] But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- [19-08] Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- [21-07] Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- [38-11] Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- [43-13] The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- [49-18] God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

precious

Facts:

The term “precious” describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term “precious stones” or “precious jewels” refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called “precious metals.”
- Yahweh says that his people are “precious” in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God’s sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- This term could also be translated as, “valuable” or “very dear” or “cherished” or “highly valued.”

(See also: [gold](#), [silver](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

prince, princess

Definition:

A “prince” is the son of a king. A “princess” is a daughter of a king.

- The term “prince” is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham’s wealth and importance, he was referred to as a “prince” by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term “prince” is used in the expressions “prince of Persia” and “prince of Greece,” which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a “prince” in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as “the prince of this world.”
- Jesus is called the “Prince of Peace” and the “Prince of Life.”
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as “Lord and Christ” and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as “Prince and Savior,” showing the parallel meaning of “Lord” and “Prince.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “prince” could include, “king’s son” or “ruler” or “leader” or “chieftain” or “captain.”
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, “spirit ruler” or “leading angel.”
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, “evil spirit ruler” or “powerful spirit leader” or “ruling spirit,” depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [authority](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as, “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See: [preach](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

profane**Definition:**

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb “to profane” could be translated as “to treat as unholy” or “to be irreverent toward” or “to dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: [defile](#), [be defiled](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unclean](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example, the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- [17-13] God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- [19-01] Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- [19-06] All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- [19-17] Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- [21-09] The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- [43-05] "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- [43-07] "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- [48-12] Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.
-

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or a country are “prosperous,” it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing “prosperity.”

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as, “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression, “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as, “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as, “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as, “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression, “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as, “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: [arrogant](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [joy](#), [joyful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-02]** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **[34-10]** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

province, provincial

Facts:

A province is a division or part of a nation or empire. The term “provincial” describes something that is related to a province, such as a provincial governor.

- For example, the ancient Persian Empire was divided up into provinces such as Media, Persia, Syria, and Egypt.
- During the time of the New Testament, the Roman Empire was divided up into provinces such as Macedonia, Asia, Syria, Judea, Samaria, Galilee, and Galatia.
- Each province had its own ruling authority, who was subject to the king or ruler of the empire. This ruler was sometimes called a “provincial official” or “provincial governor.”
- The terms “province” and “provincial” could also be translated as “region” and “regional.”

(See also: [Asia](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [EstherGalatia](#), [Galilee](#), [Galilean](#), [Judea](#), [Macedonia](#), [Medes](#), [Media](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#), [Syria](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as, “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as, “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase, “provided purification for sins” could be translated as, “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include, “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See: [atonement](#), [atone](#), [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

purple

Facts:

The term “purple” is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ephod](#), [Philippi](#), [royal](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

qualify, qualified

Definition:

The term “qualify” refers to earning the right to receive certain benefits or to be recognized as having certain skills.

- A person who is “qualified” for a particular job has the necessary skills and training to do that job.
- In his letter to the Colossian church, the apostle Paul wrote that God the Father has made believers “qualified” to participate in his kingdom of light. This means that God has given them everything they need to live godly lives.
- The believer cannot earn the right to be part of God’s kingdom. He is only qualified because God has redeemed him with the blood of Christ.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “qualified” could be translated as, “equipped” or “skilled” or “enabled.”
- To “qualify” someone could be translated as to “equip” or to “enable” or to “empower.”

(See also: [Colossae](#), [Colossians](#), [godly](#), [godliness](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

queen

Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- The term “queen mothAthaliaher” usually refers to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence, as was seen in the case of Athaliah who influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: [Ahasuerus](#), [Athaliah](#), [Esther](#), [king](#), [Persia](#), [Persians ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Sheba](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rage

Facts:

Rage is excessive anger which is out of control. When someone rages, it means that person is expressing anger in a destructive way.

- Rage happens when the emotion of anger causes a person to lose self control.
- When controlled by rage, people commit acts and say things which are destructive.
- The term “to rage” can also refer to powerful movements, such as a “raging” storm or ocean waves that “rage.”
- The “nations rage” refers to ungodly people who disobey God and rebel against him.
- To be “filled with rage” means to have an overwhelming feeling of extreme anger.

(See also: [angry](#), [anger](#), [self-control](#),

Bible References:

Waiting

raise, rise, risen, arise, arose**Definition:****raise, raise up**

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase, “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase, “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose” and “arose” are used for expressing past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as, “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen”!

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” can be translated as “to lift up” or “to make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as, “to cause to appear” or “to appoint” or “to bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead,” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as, “provide” or “appoint” or “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [exalt](#), [exaltation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-14] The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- [41-05] "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- [43-07] "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- [44-05] "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- [44-08] Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- [48-04] This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- [49-02] He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- [49-12] You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

rebel, rebellious, rebellion

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term “to rebel” could also be translated as “to disobey” or “to revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

:(See also: [authority](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [14-14] After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- [18-07] Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- [18-09] Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- [18-13] Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- [20-07] But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- [45-03] Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.

reign

Definition:

The term “to reign” means to rule as a king over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term ”reign is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel when they rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king” or “governing as king.”

(See also: [king](#), [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

report**Definition:**

The term “to report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A report can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression, “Report this to no one” could be translated as, “Don’t talk about this with anyone” or “Don’t tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include, “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

Waiting

shows the interruption of thought and

shows the interruption of thought and

rest**Definition:**

The term “to rest” literally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. The phrase “the rest of” refers to the remainder of something.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animal rests, it can mean that they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to rest (oneself)” could also be translated as “to stop working” or “to refresh himself” or “to stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as, “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- When God says, “they will not enter my rest,” this could be translated as, “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

restore, restoration**Definition:**

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored, has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people are restored to their home country it means they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include: “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- An expression for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it means it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration,” could be translated as, “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

Waiting

resurrection

Definition:

The term “resurrection” refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word “resurrection” often refers to Jesus’ coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, “I am the Resurrection and the Life” he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “resurrection” could also be translated as, “coming back to life” or, “becoming alive again after being dead.”
- The literal meaning of this word is “a rising up” or “the act of being raised (from the dead).” These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [raise](#), [rise](#), [risen](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-14] Through the Messiah’s death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- [37-05] Jesus replied, “I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.

reveal, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- In the Bible, the term “reveal” is often used to describe how God has made himself known to people.
- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul says that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- The New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealing events that will happen in the end times. He revealed this to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include, “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be, “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in this word.
- The phrase, “where there is no revelation” could be translated as, “when God does not reveal himself to people” or “when God has not spoken to people” or “among people whom God has not communicated to.”

(See also: [good news](#), [gospel](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [dream](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reward

Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. “To reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because of doing something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement, “the reward of the wicked.” In this context, “reward” refers to punishment or negative consequences from sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- “To reward” someone could be translated by “to repay” or “to punish” or “to give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#), [punishment](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

righteous, righteousness

Definition:

The terms “righteous” and “righteousness” refer to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people who the Bible calls “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous based on Jesus’ righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as, “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When referring to people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase, “the righteous” could also be translated as, “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” is used figuratively and refers to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: [good](#), [goodness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **[04-08]** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **[17-02]** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[23-01]** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **[50-10]** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

robe**Definition:**

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by both men and women. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short in length.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: [royal](#), [tunic](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

royal

Definition:

The term “royal” describes people and things which are associated with a king or queen.

- Examples of things that can be called “royal” include a king’s clothing, palace, throne, or crown.
- A king or queen usually lives in a royal palace.
- A king wears special clothing, sometimes called “royal robes.” Often a king’s robes were colored purple, which was a rare and expensive type of dye.
- In the New Testament, believers in Jesus are called a “royal priesthood.” Other ways to translate this could include, “priests who serve God the King” or “called to be priests for God the King.”
- The term “royal” could also be translated as “kingly” or “belonging to a king.”

(See also: [king](#), [palace](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [purple](#), [queen](#), [robe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ruler, rulers, rule

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group.

- In the Old Testament, a king was also referred to with the general term “ruler,” as in the phrase, “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God is referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action “to rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when referring a king ruling.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

run, running

Definition:

Literally the term “run” refers to moving very quickly on foot, usually at a much faster pace than walking.

This main meaning of “run” is also used in figurative expressions such as the following:

- “run in such a way as to win the prize” – refers to persevering in doing God’s will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win.
- “run in the path of your commands” – means to gladly and quickly obey God’s commands.
- “run after other gods” – means to persist in worshiping other gods.
- “I run to you to hide me” – means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things.

Other figurative meanings of “run”:

- Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to “run.” This could also be translated as, “flow.”
- The border of a country or region is said to “run along” a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated as “its border is next to” or “it borders.”
- Rivers and streams can “run dry,” which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as “have dried up” or “have become dry.”
- The days of a feast can “run their course,” which means they “have passed by” or “are finished” or “are over.”

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [persevere](#), [perseverance](#), [refuge](#), [shelter](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made out of goat hair or camel hair.

- Clothing made out of sackcloth was uncomfortable for the person wearing it. It was worn as a way of showing mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could also be translated as, “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as, “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [ash](#), [ashes](#), [dust](#), [camel](#), [goat](#), [kid](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [mourn](#), [mourning](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sacred**Definition:**

Term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, often the term “sacred” is used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” or “sacred music” refer to music that is sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” refers to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performs to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [consecrate](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sacrifice, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin. Animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action, “to sacrifice” could be translated as, “to give up something valuable” or “to kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be, “As you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal that is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#) [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.

- [05-06] "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- [05-09] God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- [17-06] David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- [48-06] Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- [48-08] But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- [49-11] Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

saints

Definition:

The term “saints” literally means “holy ones” and refers to believers in Jesus.

- Later in church history, a person known for his good works was given the title “saint,” but that is not the way this term was used in the New Testament.
- Believers in Jesus are saints or holy ones, not because of what they have done, but rather through faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “saints” could include, “holy ones” or “holy people” or “holy believers in Jesus” or “set apart ones.”
- Be careful not to use a term that refers to people of only one Christian group.

(See: [holy](#), [holiness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sanctuary

Definition:

The term “sanctuary” literally means “holy place” and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sanctuary” is often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the “holy place” and “most holy place” were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a “sanctuary” or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of “holy place” or “place that is set apart.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sanctuary” could be translated as “holy place” or “sacred building” or “God’s holy dwelling place” or “holy place of protection” or “sacred place of safety.”
- The phrase “shekel of the sanctuary” could be translated as, “kind of shekel given for the tabernacle” or “shekel used as a tax to take care of the temple.”
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern day church.

(See also: [Biblical Money](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [sacred](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [tax](#), [taxes](#), [temple](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

save, safe

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” it means that through Jesus’ death on the cross, God has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include, “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression, “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [salvation](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-08]** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **[11-02]** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **[12-05]** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **[16-17]** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **[44-08]** “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- **[47-11]** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”

- [49-12] Good works cannot **save** you.
- [49-13] God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

seal, to seal

Definition:

To seal an object means to keep it closed with something that makes it impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus' grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a "seal" showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [tomb](#), [grave](#), [burial place](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

servant, slave, slavery

Definition:

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a servant or a slave is being referred to.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave is a kind of servant who is the property of the person he works for. The person who buys a slave is called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treat their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treat their slaves very well, like a servant who is a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It does not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God are often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obey God through faith in Christ are often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obeying his master. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [serve](#), [service](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[08-04]** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **[09-13]** ”I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt.”

- **[19-10]** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **[29-03]** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **[35-06]** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **[47-04]** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **[50-04]** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

serve, service

Definition:

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a woman serving her guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to serve the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute to” or “hand out to” or “give to.”¹[comment_5adb7a6af206fdb7787dd58f4b215940](#)
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as, “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- “To serve God” can be translated as “to worship and obey God” or “to do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables.
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant, that is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about this in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

shame, shameful, ashamed

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent, by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [humiliate](#), [humiliation](#), [Isaiah](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sheep, ram, ewe

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. The male sheep is called a “ram.” The female sheep is called a “ewe.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially males and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-12]** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **[17-02]** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **[30-03]** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **[38-08]** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- Signs can be reminders of something that was promised:
 - The rainbow God created in the sky was a sign to remind people that he would never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
 - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
 - An angel told shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
 - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
 - The miracles done by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.
 - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as, “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [covenant](#), [circumcise](#), [circumcision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The containers would include silver cups and bowls, among other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, silver coins and silver weights called shekels were used.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a sinful nature that controls them.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context, “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include, “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- * **[03-15]** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- * **[13-12]** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- * **[20-01]** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- * **[21-13]** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- * **[35-01]** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- * **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- * **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- * **[48-08]** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- * **[49-17]** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

sleep, asleep, fall asleep

Definition:

These terms have figurative meanings relating to death.

- To “sleep” or “be asleep” can be a metaphor meaning to “be dead.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- The expression “fall asleep” refers to the moment when someone starts sleeping, or in its figurative sense, the moment when someone dies.
- To “sleep with the fathers” means to be dead, as one’s ancestors are.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term “to sleep” or “to be asleep” could be translated as “to be dead.”
- To “fall asleep” could be translated as “to suddenly be asleep” or “to start sleeping” or “to die,” depending on its meaning.
- note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus was “sleeping” they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as “he died.”
- Some languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expression “sleep” or “asleep” does not make sense in the project language.

Bible References:

Waiting

snow**Facts:**

The term “snow” refers to white flakes of frozen water that fall from clouds in places where the air temperature is cold.

- Snow falls in places of higher elevation in Israel, but may not always stay on the ground very long before melting. The peaks of mountains tend to have snow that lasts longer. One example of this is the Bible’s mention of snow on Mount Lebanon.
- Something that is white is often compared to the color of snow, as when Jesus’ clothing or hair is described as being “white as snow.”
- The whiteness of snow also symbolizes being pure and clean. For example, the statement that our “sins will be as white as snow” means that God completely cleanses his people from their sins.
- Some languages might refer to snow as “frozen rain” or “flakes of ice” or “frozen flakes.”
- “Snow water” refers to the water that comes from melted snow.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Lebanon](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Son of Man, son of man

Definition:

The title, “Son of Man” was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying “I” or “me.”

- In the Bible, “son of man” can be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It can also mean “human being.”
- Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addresses Ezekiel as “son of man.” For example he says, “You, son of man, must prophesy.”
- The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a “son of man” coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
- Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
- These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When Jesus uses the term “Son of Man,” this could be translated as, “the One who became a human being” or “the Man from heaven.”
- Some translators occasionally include “I” or “me” with this title (as in, “I, the Son of Man”) to make it clear that Jesus is talking about himself.
- Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
- When used to refer to a person, “son of man” could also be translated as, “you, a human being” or “you, man” or “human being” or “man.”

(See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [son](#), [son of](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft

Definition:

“Sorcery” or “witchcraft” refers to using magic, which involves doing powerful things through the help of evil spirits. A “sorcerer” is someone who does these powerful, magical things.

- The use of magic and sorcery can involve both beneficial things (such as healing someone) and harmful things (such as putting a curse on someone). But all kinds of sorcery are wrong, because they use the power of evil spirits.
- In the Bible, God says that the use of sorcery is as evil as other terrible sins (such as adultery, worshiping idols, and child sacrifice).
- The terms “sorcery” and “witchcraft” could also be translated as, “evil spirit power” or “casting spells.”
- Possible ways to translated “sorcerer” could include, “worker of magic” or “person who casts spells” or “person who does miracles using evil spirit power.”
- Note that “sorcery” has a different meaning than the term “divination,” which refers to attempting to contact the spirit world.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [magic](#), [magician](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings that give nourishment to a person’s spirit, “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in, “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” or “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include, “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person as in, “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as, “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as, “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as, “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as, “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- A “spiritual gift” could be translated as, “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-03]** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **[40-07]** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **[45-05]** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **[48-07]** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

splendor

Definition:

The term “splendor” refers to extreme beauty and elegance that is often associated with wealth and a magnificent appearance.

- Often splendor is used to describe the wealth that a king has, or how he looks in his expensive, beautiful finery.
- The word “splendor” can also be used to describe the beauty of trees, mountains, and other things that God has created.
- Certain cities are said to have splendor, referring to their natural resources, elaborate buildings and roads, and the wealth of the people, including rich clothing, gold and silver.
- Depending on the context, this word could be translated as, “magnificent beauty” or “amazing majesty” or “kingly greatness.”

(See also: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [king](#), [majesty](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

statute, statutes

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” or ” command” or “law” or “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [decree](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stone, stoning

Definition:

A stone is a small rock. The term “stoning” refers to throwing stones and larger rocks at a person in order to kill him.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- The New Testament tells of a time that Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed because of testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [crime](#), [criminal](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [Lystra](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stronghold, fortress, fortified

Definition:

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses are manmade structures with defensive walls. They can also be natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortify strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that make it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” refers to something that someone wrongly trusts in for security, such as a false god or other thing that is worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as, “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [refuge](#), [shelter](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stumble

Definition:

The term “stumble” means to “almost fall” when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, “to stumble” can mean “to sin” or “to falter” in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.

Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term “stumble” means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means “almost fall” or “trip over.”
- This literal meaning could also be used in a figurative context, if it communicates the correct meaning in that context.
- For figurative uses where the literal meaning would not make sense in the project language, “stumble” could be translated as, “sin” or “falter” or “stop believing” or “become weak,” depending [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) on the context.
- Another way to translate this term could be, “stumble by sinning” or “stumble by not believing.”
- The phrase “made to stumble” could be translated as “caused to become weak” or “caused to falter.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [stumbling](#), [block](#), [stone of stumbling](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sweep, swept

Facts:

The terms “sweep” and “swept” usually refer to a broad, quick movement to remove dirt using a broom or brush. These words are also used figuratively.

- The term “sweep” is used figuratively to describe how an army attacks with swift, decisive, wide-reaching movements.
- For example, Isaiah prophesied that the Assyrians would “sweep through” the Kingdom of Judah. This means they would destroy Judah and capture its people.
- The term “sweep” can also be used to describe the manner in which rapidly flowing water pushes things and forces them away.
- To have something “sweep over” a person means that overwhelming, difficult things are happening to him.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Isaiah](#), [Judah](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sword

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- The blade of a sword in ancient times was around 60 to 91 centimeters long.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called “double-edged” or “two-edged” swords.
- Jesus’ disciples had swords they planned to use to defend themselves. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest’s servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God’s word. God’s teachings in the Bible expose people’s innermost thoughts and convict them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, “God’s word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin.”
- Another figurative use of this term is in the book of Psalms where the tongue or speech of a person is compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as, “the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone.”
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a “sharp weapon” or “long knife.” Some translations may decide to include a picture of a sword.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tax, taxes**Definition:**

The terms “tax” and “taxes” refer to money or goods that people pay to a government that is in authority over them.

- The amount of money that is paid for tax is usually based on the value of an item or on how much a person’s property is worth.
- If taxes are not paid, the government can take legal action against a person to get the money that is owed.
- Joseph and Mary traveled to Bethlehem to be counted in the census that was for the purpose of taxing everyone living in the Roman empire.
- There was also a “temple tax” which was money that people put in the temple offering box. Some of this money was used for taking care of the temple building.
- The term “tax” could also be translated as, “required payment” or “government money” or “temple money,” depending on the context.
- Phrases such as, “collect taxes” and “pay taxes” could also be translated as, “pay money to the government” or “receive money for the government” or “make the required payment.”
- A “tax collector” is someone who works for the government to receive the money that people are required to pay them.

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [census](#), [citizen](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” refers to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it refers only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- During the reign of King Solomon he built the Temple, which was the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- When it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations will translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it clear what is being referred to.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [court Zion](#), [Mount Zion house](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-06] David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- [18-02] In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- [20-07] They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.

- [20-13] When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- [25-04] Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- [40-07] When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

tent

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents made of sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he made tents to earn money to support himself.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses." (See: [Synecdoche](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [curtain](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Sinai](#), [Mount Sinai](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent of meeting](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

terror, terrify**Definition:**

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” (or “terrors”) is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as, “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include, “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [plague](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

test

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to keep disobeying him, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to test” could also be translated as, “to challenge” or “to cause to experience difficulties” or “to prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as “to test” or “to set up a challenge” or “to force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: [tempt](#), [temptation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

thresh, threshing

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating wheat grain from the rest of the wheat plant.

- Threshing the wheat plant loosens the grain from the straw and the chaff. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the grain from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#), [winnow](#), [sift](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

throne

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a king sits to decide important matters and to listen to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a king has.
- The word “throne” is often used figuratively to refer to the king, his reign, or his power. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- In the Bible, God is often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus is described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

time

Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” is often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events take place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- Both Daniel and Revelation speak of a “time” of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase “time, times, and half a time” the term “time” means “year.” This phrase refers to a three and a half year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- Phrases such as “second time” or “many times” refer to the number of occurrences that something happened.
- To be “on time” means to arrive when expected, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” **Doublet**

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The terms “transgress” and “transgression” refer to breaking a command, rule, or moral code.

- Figuratively, “transgression” can also be described as “crossing a line,” that is, going beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
- The terms “transgression”, “sin”, “iniquity”, and “trespass” all include the meaning of acting against God’s will and disobeying his commands.

Translation Suggestions:

- “To transgress” could be translated as “to sin” or “to disobey” or “to rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance. (See: [parallelism](#))

(See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [trespass](#), [iniquity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

trouble, troubles, troubled

Definition:

The term “trouble” refers to experiences in life that are very difficult and distressing. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.
- The action, “to trouble” someone means “to bother” that person or to cause him distress.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as, “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as, “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as, “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include, “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), [affliction](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

true, truth, come true

Definition:

The terms “true” and “truth” refer to concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said.

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- The expression “come true” or “came true” is an expression that means that a prophecy actually happened as it was predicted that it would.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include, “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as, “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as, “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as, “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as, “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by, “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not **true**! You will not die.”
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God.

- [31-08] They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- [39-10] "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

trumpet

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [earth](#), [earthly](#), [horn](#), [horns](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

The term “trust” refers to believing that something or someone is true or dependable. A “trustworthy” person can be relied on to do and say what is right and true.

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God and that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include, “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as, “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: , [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [faith](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- [14-15] Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [17-02] David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [34-06] Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

tunic

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “tunic” refers to a garment that was worn next to the skin, under other clothing.

- A tunic reached from the shoulders down to the waist or knees and was usually worn with a belt. Tunics worn by wealthy people sometimes had sleeves and reached to the ankles.
- Tunics were made of leather, haircloth, wool, or linen, and were worn by both men and women.
- A tunic was normally worn under a longer over-garment, such as a toga or outer robe. In warmer weather a tunic was sometimes worn with no outer garment.
- This term could be translated as “long shirt” or “long undergarment” or “shirt-like garment.” It could also be written in a similar way to “tunic,” with a note to explain what kind of clothing it was.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See Also: [robe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

turn, turn away, turn back

Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as, “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as, “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as, “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression, “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as, “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as, “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [idol](#), [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

vision

Facts:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as, “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as, “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like, “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: [dream](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

voice**Definition:**

The term “voice” is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn’t have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as, “A person is heard calling out in the desert...” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- To “hear someone’s voice” could also be translated as “hear someone speaking.”
- Sometimes the word “voice” may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the “voice” of the heavens proclaims God’s mighty works. This could also be translated as “their splendor shows clearly how great God is.”

(See also: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#), [splendor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

walk

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [\[:en:obe:other:obey\]](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also refer to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as, “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include, “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

smashed

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include, “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See: [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-05] She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- [18-01] When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- [23-09] Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- [45-01] He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

wise men

Facts:

In the Bible, the phrase “wise men” often refers to men who serve God and act wisely, not foolishly. This is also a special term that refers to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served as part of a king’s court.

- Sometimes the term “wise men” is explained in the text as “prudent men” or “men with understanding.” This refers to men who act wisely and righteously because they obey God.
- The “wise men” who served pharaohs and other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky.
- Often wise men were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel who had received this knowledge from God.
- Sometimes wise men also performed magical acts such as divination or miracles that were done through the power of evil spirits.
- In the New Testament, the group of men who came from eastern regions to worship Jesus were called “magi,” which is often translated as “wise men” since this probably refers to scholars who served a ruler of an eastern country.
- It is very probable that these men were astrologers who studied the stars. Some have thought that they may have been descendants of the wise men whom Daniel taught when he was in Babylon.
- Depending on the context, the term “wise men” could be translated using the term “wise” or with a phrase such as, “gifted men” or “educated men” or some other term that refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler.
- When “wise men” is simply a noun phrase, the word “wise” should be translated in the same or similar way to how it is translated elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Daniel](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [magic](#), [magician](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

word

Definition:

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include, “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”
- When it refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Saying.”

(See also: [word of God](#), [God’s word](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures or “Old Testament.” These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people can still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as, “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone, it could be translated as “message” or “God’s word” or “teachings,” depending on the context. Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-07]** In **God’s word** he commands his people, “Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.”
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, “The seed is the **word of God**.”

- [42-03] Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- [42-07] Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- [45-10] Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- [48-12] But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- [49-18] God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

works, deeds, work, acts

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as, “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be, “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as, “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression, “the work of God” could be translated as, “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in, “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression, “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression, “examine your own work” could also be translated as, “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as, “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

worship

Definition:

“To worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally, “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [praise](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **[14-02]** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **[17-06]** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **[25-07]** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, “**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.”
- **[26-02]** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **[47-01]** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **[49-18]** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

wrath, fury**Definition:**

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include, "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

written**Definition:**

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated: “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name “Yahweh” comes from the word that means, “to be” or “to exist.”
- Possible meanings of “Yahweh” include, “he is” or “I am” or “the one who causes to be.”
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-14]** God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”

- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **[13-05]** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **[19-10]** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

translationAcademy

First, Second or Third Person

This answers the question: What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*
- *Pronouns*

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker referred to himself or to the person he was speaking to with a phrase other than “I” or “you”.

Description

Definitions

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker used the third person to refer to himself or the people he was speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people uses the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “*Your servant* used to keep *his* father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULB)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
”... Do you have an arm like *God’s*? Can you thunder with a voice like *him*? (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful. Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to *my Lord*, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if *each of you* does not forgive *his* brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULB)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
2. Simply use the first or second person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

- **But David said to Saul, “*Your servant* used to keep *his* father’s sheep.”** (1 Samuel 17:34)
 - But David said to Saul, “*I, your servant*, used to keep *my* father’s sheep.”

2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”).

- **Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like *God’s*? Can you thunder with a voice like *him*?”** (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)
 - Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like *mine*? Can you thunder with a voice like *me*?”
- **So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if *each of you* does not forgive *his* brother from your heart.** (Matthew 18:35 ULB)
 - So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if *each of you* does not forgive *your* brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Forms of You*

Abstract Nouns

This answers the question: What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its *weight*?" could be expressed as "How much does it *weigh*?" or "How *heavy* is it?"

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **ABSTRACT NOUNS** are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Abstract nouns allow us to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if we did not have those nouns. For example, we can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if English did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then we would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. We would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned."

Abstract nouns also allow us to refer to a situation without telling more details about it than we want to tell. For example, we can say "I got here late because there was an accident on the highway." "Accident" is an abstract noun. If it does not matter whose accident it was, or what kind of accident it was, then it can be better if I do not have to say these things about it.

Reason this is a translation issue: The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will have other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs, that express some of the meaning in the abstract noun.

Examples from the Bible

from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But *godliness* with *contentment* is great *gain*. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

- **from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
 - ”Ever since *you were a child* you have known the sacred writings.”
- **But *godliness with contentment* is great *gain*.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
 - ”But *being godly* and *content* is very *beneficial*.”
 - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *are godly* and *content*.”
 - ”But we *benefit* greatly when we *honor and obey God* and when we are *happy with what we have*.
- **Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
 - ”Today the people in this house *have been saved*...”
 - ”Today God *has saved* the people in this house...”
- **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

- "The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *moving slowly* to be"
- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart.**
(1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
 - "He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal *the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.*"

Active or Passive

This answers the question: What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentence Structure*
- *Verbs*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences the subject is the one that the action is done to. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when not to.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

ACTIVE: My father built the house in 2010.

PASSIVE: The house was built by my father in 2010.

PASSIVE: The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same reasons in all of the languages that have it.

Purposes for the passive:

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed* too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemies shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal *was broken down* ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down.

No stonework *was seen* there. (1 Kings 6:18 ULB)

This means that no one saw stonework there. The point is that no stonework was done there.

Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action.
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - *The king's servants gave* Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead use a generic expression like "they," or "people," or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone *were put* around his neck and he *were thrown* into the sea** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
 - It would be better for him if *they were to put* a millstone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
 - It would be better for him if *someone were to put* a heavy stone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - He *received* a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Abstract Nouns*
- *Word Order*

Doublet

This answers the question: What are doublets and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A doublet is a pair of words used together that mean nearly the same nearly thing. In some languages people do not use doublets, or they may use them only in certain situations. Translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning.

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean “very old.”

Description

We are using the word doublet to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing and that are used in the same phrase. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but they may do it for a reason that would not fit in a particular verse.

Examples from the Bible

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

This means that he was “very old.”

he attacked two men *more righteous* and *better* than himself (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

as of a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use your culture’s way of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.

- **You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

- ”You have decided to prepare *false* things to say.”

2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- **King David was *old* and *advanced in years***. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

- ”King David was *very old*.”

3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- **a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot***. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- ”a lamb *without any blemish at all*”

Ellipsis

This answers the question: What is ellipsis?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Ellipsis is where a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there.

Description

Ellipsis is where one or more words are left out of the sentence because the sentence can be understood without them. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous
(Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is.

Examples from the Bible

when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?”
He said, “Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite by giving Jesus only as much information as necessary. He did not say that he wanted Jesus to heal him, because he knew that Jesus would understand that if he wanted to receive his sight, Jesus would have to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf *and Sirion like a young ox.* (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor *sinner*s in the assembly of the righteous** (Psalm 1:5)
 - "the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and *sinner*s will not stand in the assembly of the righteous"
- **when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*"** (Luke 18:40-41)
 - "when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, 'What do you want me to do for you?' He said, 'Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.'"
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
 - "He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox."

Euphemism

This answers the question: What is a Euphemism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons were dead. It is euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he does not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

Paul refers to being dead as being “asleep” so that instead of thinking that they will never see their loved ones again in this life, his readers will remember that they will see them again when Jesus establishes his kingdom.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

- “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet”
- “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole”
- “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone”

2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **whether we are awake or asleep** (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

- “whether we are alive or dead”

Exclusive “We”

This answers the question: What is exclusive “we”?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but *not* you.” The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow



highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we”. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

Forgive *us our* sins (Luke 11:4 ULB)

God has no sins to forgive; so languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULB)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Inclusive “We”*

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This answers the question: What are assumed knowledge, implicit information, and explicit information?

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. There are two types information.

- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, although what he says may remind them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes *have holes*, and the birds of the sky *have nests*, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**. Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the

people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For *they do not wash their hands when they eat*. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. They were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

Hyperbole

This answers the question: What is hyperbole?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. He may greatly exaggerate something in order to show his strong feeling or opinion about it, or he may generalize the situation by using words like “every” or “all” to mean “many.”

Description

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. There are two kinds of hyperbole:

1. Exaggeration: This is when a speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it.

Whoever does not *carry his own cross* and come after me cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:27 ULB) - This is an exaggeration. It means that whoever wants to be Jesus’ disciple must be determined to follow him faithfully, even if his enemies were to kill that person.

2. Generalization: This is when a speaker uses words like “every” or “all” to mean something like “very many,” but not “every one.” (Some people may not call generalization like this “hyperbole.”)

Moses was educated in *all the learning of the Egyptians* (Acts 7:22 ULB) - This is a generalization. It means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

Reason this is a translation issue

If readers do not understand that a statement is a hyperbole, they may either think that something happened that did not happen, or they may think that the speaker or writer was saying something that is not true.

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Exaggeration

If your hand causes you to stumble, *cut it off*. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:26 ULB)

Because of many other things that Jesus said, we know that his use of the word “hate” here is hyperbole. He meant that we must not love even our own family members more than we love him. We must love him more than we love ourselves or anyone else.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, “*Everyone* is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about *all things* and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God’s Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know.

Caution

Do not assume that something is hyperbole just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus *walking on the sea* and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

... for *all* have sinned and come short of the glory of God. (Romans 3:23 ULB)

The word “all” here is not hyperbole. All humans have sinned. The only human who has never sinned is Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole. For example “all the people” could be translated as “large crowds of people.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole.

- **If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.** (Luke 14:26 ULB)
 - “If anyone comes to me and does not *love me much more than* he loves his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.”
- **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
 - “The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and *a great number of troops*.”

Idiom

This answers the question: What are idioms and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

An idiom is a certain kind of figure of speech, the kind that usually cannot be correctly understood without being told its true meaning. Every language has them. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture that uses it. Its meaning may be different from what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely *set his face* to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should *enter under my roof*. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The words “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that originally wrote the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.

Examples from the Bible

“Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.”
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

The kings of the earth take their stand together (Psalm 2:2 ULB)

This means, “The kings on earth plan together.”

the one who lifts up my head” (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

- **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.”** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
 - “...Look, we all belong to the same nation.”
- **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
 - “He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.”
- **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
 - “I am not worthy that you should enter my house.”

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

- **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
 - “Be all ears when I say these words to you.”
- **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7ULB)
 - “I am crying my eyes out”

Litotes

This answers the question: What is litotes?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

Description

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

Reason this is a translation issue

People who speak some languages do not use litotes and would fail to understand that the statement is strengthened. They might think that it is weakened or even canceled.

Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very worthwhile.

All things were made through him. *Without him was not one thing* made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using litotes John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULB)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very concerned.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
are *not the least* among the leaders of Judah,
for from you will come a ruler
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULB)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

- **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*,** (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)
 - "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you *did much good*."
- **Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.** (Acts 12:18 ULB)
 - "Now when it became day, there was *great excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
 - "Now when it became day, the soldiers were *very concerned* because of what had happened to Peter."

Merism

This answers the question: What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

Description

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

“Alpha and Omega” is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*, (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

“Heaven and earth” is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some readers may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything*"
- ***From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.*** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
 - "*In all places*, people should praise Yahweh."

2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth*"
- **He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
 - "He will bless *all those* who honor him, regardless of whether they are *young or old*."

Metaphor

This answers the question: What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- [Figures of Speech](#)
- [Simile](#)

Description

A metaphor is the use of words to speak of one thing as if it were a different thing. Sometimes a speaker does this in ways that are very common in the language. At other times, a speaker does this in ways that are less common in the language and that might even be unique.

1. First we will discuss very common metaphors.

The metaphors that are very common in a language are usually not very vivid. They may even be “dead.” Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” and “the price of food is going up.” Examples in biblical languages are “hand” to mean “power,” “face” to mean “presence,” and “clothing” to mean emotions or moral qualities.

Metaphors like these are in constant use in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, languages speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that can be seen or held, or as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that you can watch happen.

When these metaphors are used in their normal ways, the speaker and audience do not normally even regard them as figurative language. This is why, for example, it would be wrong to translate the English expression, “The price of petrol is going up” into another language in a way that would draw undeserved attention to it, because English speakers do not view it as a vivid expression, that is, as an unusual expression that carries meaning in an unusual manner.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

2. Next we will discuss the less common metaphors, metaphors that are sometimes even unique in a language.

The speaker usually produces metaphors of this kind in order to emphasize the importance of what he is talking about. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. And he speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

We call this kind of metaphor “live.” It is unique in the biblical languages, which means that it is very memorable.

Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. The thing someone speaks of is called the **topic**. The thing he calls it is the **image**. The way that they are similar is the **point of comparison**.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a rose. The woman (his “love”) is the topic and the red rose is the image. Both are beautiful and delicate.

- My love is a red, red rose.

1. Sometimes the **topic** and the **image** are both stated clearly.

Jesus said to them. *“I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will not hunger, and he who believes on me will never thirst.”* (John 6:35 ULB)

Jesus called himself the bread of life. The topic is “I” and the image is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have spiritual life.

2. Sometimes only the **image** is stated clearly.

Produce *fruits* that are worthy of repentance (Luke 3:8 ULB)

The image here is “fruits”. The topic is not stated, but it is actions or behavior. Trees can produce good fruit or bad fruit, and people can produce good behavior or bad behavior. Fruits that are worthy of repentance are good behavior that is appropriate for people who have repented.

Purposes of this second kind of metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel toward another.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not realize that a word is being used as an image in a metaphor.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know how the topic and the image are alike.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” Just as a potter takes clay and forms a jar or dish out of it, God makes us into what he wants us to be.

Jesus said to them, ”Take heed and beware of *the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.*” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor about the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

- **For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he fell asleep*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,** (Acts 13:36 ULB)

- "For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he died*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay."

2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding "like" or "as."

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand."

3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)

- "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick."

4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."
- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.

- **I will make you become *fishers of men*.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)

- "I will make you become *people who gather men*."
- "Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people*."

6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)

- "Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - "Yahweh lives; may he be praised because like a huge rock, *he shields me from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted."
- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you *to kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself* like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick."

To learn more about common metaphors read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#)

Metonymy

This answers the question: What is a metonymy?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Many times the Bible uses metonymy. If you do not recognize it as a metonymy you will not understand the passage or worse yet, get the wrong understanding of the passage.

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and *the blood* of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a concrete object associated with it.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. Throne is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or, "reign." This means that God would make him become the king who was to follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

who warned you to flee from *the wrath* that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here is an option.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

- **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
 - “He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*The wine in this cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

- **The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
 - “The Lord God will give him *the kingly authority* of his father, David.”
 - “The Lord God will *make him king* like his ancestor, King David.”
- **who warned you to flee from *the wrath* to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
 - “who warned you to flee from God’s coming *punishment*?”

To learn about some common metonymies, we suggest you read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#)

Nominal Adjectives

This answers the question: How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*

Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

The rich man had huge numbers of flocks and herds, (2 Samuel 12:2 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last; (Job 15:29 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

...the rich must not give more than the half shekel, and *the poor* must not give less.
(Exodus 30:15 ULB)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use adjectives this way.
- Readers may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about many people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *the righteous*. (Psalms 125:3 ULB)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are *the meek* (Matthew 5:5 ULB)

“The meek” here are people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.
 - **The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *the righteous*.** (Psalms 125:3 ULB)
 - "The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *righteous people*."
 - **Blessed are *the meek*** (Matthew 5:5 ULB)
 - "Blessed are *people who are meek*"

Parallelism

This answers the question: What is parallelism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use the kind of parallelism in which the two phrases mean the same thing. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning.

Examples from the Bible

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

3. The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

1. For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases.
2. When the two clauses or phrases mean the same thing, some languages would not translate them both. (See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#)

Personification

This answers the question: What is personification?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often speak this way because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom and sin.

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

Some languages do not use personification, and some languages use it only in certain situations.

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom, sin, and wind. For example:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about relationships between people and other people than about relationships between people and non-human things, such as wealth.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. They are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would not be understood clearly, here are some strategies for dealing with it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

- “sin is at your door, waiting to attack you”

2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

- “sin is about to destroy you, just *as* a wild animal could harm a person.”

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the wind and the sea as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

- “He even controls the winds and the sea.”

Note: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had human characteristics).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Apostrophe*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Pronouns

This answers the question: What are pronouns and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*

Pronouns are words that people use instead of a noun to refer to someone or something. Some examples are I, you, he, it, this, that, himself, someone.

Description

Pronouns are words that people use instead of a noun to refer to someone or something. There are six different types of pronouns.

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give.

Person

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
 - Inclusive “We”
 - Exclusive “We”
- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
 - Forms of You
- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

Number

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)
- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

Gender

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it

Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Other Types of pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

- **John saw *himself* in the mirror.** - The word “himself” refers to John.

Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- ***Who* built the house?**

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- **I saw the house *that* John built.** The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
- **I saw the man *who* built the house.** The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- **Have you seen *this* here?**
- **Who is *that* over there?**

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used: you, they, he or it.

- **He does not want to talk to *anyone*.**
- ***Someone* fixed it, but I do not know *who*.**

Direct and Indirect Quotations

This answers the question: What are direct and indirect quotations?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*
- *Verbs*
- *Quotations and Quote Margins*

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

- Direct Quotation: John said, “I do not know at what time I will arrive.”
- Indirect Quotation: John said that he did not know what time he would arrive.

When translating a quotation, translators need to decide whether to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

Watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/oe9Pbk8pFTw>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/9ZKDMCWuCiw>).

Description

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by direct or indirect quotations.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker’s exact words. In the example below, John would have said “I” when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is telling about John John saying this, uses the word in the quotation “I” to refer to John.

- John said, “*I* do not know at what time *I* will arrive.”

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person’s point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as “he” in the quotation and uses the word “would,” which is the past tense of “will.”

- John said that *he* did not know what time *he* would arrive.

Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below have both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULB)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him *to tell no one*,
- Direct quote: but told him, *”Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest...”*

Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, “The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, ‘Look here!’ or, ‘Look there!’ because the kingdom of God is among you.” (Luke 17:20-21 ULB)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees *when the kingdom of God would come*,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, *”The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, ‘Look here!’ or, ‘Look there!’ because the kingdom of God is among you.”*
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, *’Look here!’* or, *’Look there!’*

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

- **He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, *”Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”*** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
 - He instructed him to tell no one, but *to go on his way, and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”*

2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

- **He instructed him *to tell no one*, but told him, *“Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”*** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
 - He told him *”Tell no one. But go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”*

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Quotes within Quotes*

Rhetorical Question

This answers the question: What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express sarcasm or to rebuke or scold the hearer. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other reasons as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers often use rhetorical questions to rebuke or scold people.

Those who stood by said, *Is this how you insult God's high priest?*" (Acts 23:4 ULB) The people did not ask this question in order to get information. Rather they used it to scold Paul because they did not think he should have spoken as he did to the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to remind people of something that they already know, to express strong emotion, to say something in a strong way, or to introduce something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may think that a question is a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions only for scolding.
- Some readers might think that the purpose of a question is something other than what it really is.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel he should feel free to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a woman would never forget her jewelry and veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat.

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed which a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

Translation Strategies

Be sure you know that you are dealing with a rhetorical question and not an information question. Then be sure you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.

- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
 - *Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!*
- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
 - *”Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!”*

2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

- **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
 - *“This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”*
- **Is this how you insult God’s high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
 - *You should not insult God’s high priest!”*
- **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
 - *I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!”*
- **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
 - *“How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!”*

3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

- **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
 - *”You still rule the kingdom of Israel, don’t you?”*

Simile

This answers the question: What is a simile?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36 ULB)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise *as serpents* and harmless *as doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1 If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
 - "See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves."
- **For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword***. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
 - "For the word of God is living and active and *more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword*"

2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
 - "See, I send you out *as chickens in the midst of wild dogs*,"
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard**, (Matthew 17:20 ULB)
 - "If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed"

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
 - "See, I send you out and people will want to harm you."
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - "How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metaphor*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Synecdoche

This answers the question: What does the word synecdoche mean?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul”, the part of herself that has emotions, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the legs and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

- **My soul exalts the Lord.** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
 - "I exalt the Lord."
- **the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)
 - "a representative of the Pharisees said to him"
- **I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
 - "I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metonymy*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies*

Forms of You

This answers the question: What are the different forms of you?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular*
- *Forms of 'You' - Dual/Plural*

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

Watch the video for Singular, Dual, and Plural “you” for computer (see <http://youtu.be/cPtjzJ2Advk>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/AVITfDEk8nc>).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular to a Crowd*

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend. Watch the video on Formal and Informal ‘You’ on the **computer** or on the **tablet/phone**. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- *Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal*

Biblical Distance

This answers the question: How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Decimal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man’s hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man’s hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man’s forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **“long” cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong”, which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

| Original Measure | Centimeters | Meters |
|------------------|----------------|------------|
| handbreadth | 8 centimeters | .08 meters |
| span | 23 centimeters | .23 meters |
| cubit | 46 centimeters | .46 meters |
| “long” cubit | 54 centimeters | .54 meters |
| stadia | - | 185 meters |

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

- **They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.** (Exodus 25:10 ULB)

1. Use the measurements given in the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *two and a half kubits*; its width will be *one kubit and a half*; and its height will be *one kubit and a half*."

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *one meter*; its width will be *0.7 meter*; and its height will be *0.7 meter*."

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard foot length, you could translate it as below.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *3 3/4 feet*; its width will be *2 1/4 feet*; and its height will be *2 1/4 feet*."

4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *two and a half cubits (one meter)*; its width will be *one cubit and a half (0.7 meter)*; and its height will be *one cubit and a half (0.7 meter)*."

5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *one meter*¹; its width will be *0.7 meter*²; and its height will be *0.7 meter*." The footnotes would look like:
 - ^[1] one meter two and a half cubits
 - ^[2] one cubit and a half

Biblical Money

This answers the question: How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?

Description:

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

| Unit in OT | Metal | Weight |
|------------|----------------|--------------|
| daric | gold coin | 8.4 grams |
| shekel | various metals | 11 grams |
| talent | various metals | 33 kilograms |

| Unit in NT | Metal | Day's Wage |
|------------------|-------------|------------|
| denarius/denarii | silver coin | 1 day |
| drachma | silver coin | 1 day |
| mite | copper coin | 1/64 day |
| shekel | silver coin | 4 days |
| talent | silver | 6,000 days |

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.

3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

- **The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULB)

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "The one owed *five hundred denali*, and the other owed *fifty denali*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)

2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

- "The one owed *five hundred silver coins*, and the other owed *fifty silver coins*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)

3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

- "The one owed *five hundred days' wages*, and the other owed *fifty days' wages*."

4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

- "The one owed *five hundred denarii*¹, and the other owed *fifty denarii*."² (Luke 7:41 ULB) The footnotes would look like:

- ^[1] five hundred days's wages
- ^[2] fifty day's wages

5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

- "The one owed *five hundred denarii*¹, and the other owed *fifty denarii*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
 - ^[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Copy or Borrow Words](#)
- [Translate Unknowns](#)

Hebrew Months

This page answers the question: What are the Hebrew months?

In order to understand this page, it would be good to read

- [Ordinal Numbers](#)

Description

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons this is a translation issue

1. Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months they use.
2. Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
3. Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
4. The scripture may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Abib - (This month is called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile) - This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

Sivan - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

Ab - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

Elul - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

Ethanim - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

Kislev - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.

Tebeth - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

Shebat - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

Adar - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples from the Bible

You are going out of Egypt on this day, in *the month of Abib*. (Exodus 13:4 ULB)

You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day *in the first month of the year*, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULB)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

1. Tell the the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

- **At that time, you will appear before me in *the month of Abib*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.** (Exodus 23:15 ULB)
- **It will always be a statute for you that in *the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month*, you must humble yourselves and do no work** (Leviticus 16:29 ULB)

1. Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

- "At that time, you will appear before me in *the first month of the year*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt."

2. Use the months that people know.

- "At that time, you will appear before me in *the month of March*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt."
- "It will always be a statute for you that *on the day I choose in late September* you must humble yourselves and do no work"

3. State clearly what season the month occurred.

- "It will always be a statute for you that *in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month*, you must humble yourselves and do no work"

4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

- "It will always be a statute for you that in *the day I choose in early autumn* you must humble yourselves and do no work"

How to Translate Names

This answers the question: How can I translate names that are new to my culture?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. All names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this *Melchizedek*, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” simply to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” simply to tell us something about Melchizedek.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace. (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the the Living One who sees me.”

She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name *Moses* sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names *Saul* and *Paul* refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name all of the time and write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with the *Amorites*** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
 - “You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the city of *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*”
- **Shortly after, some *Pharisees* came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULB)

- “Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.”

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

- **She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
 - “She named him *Moses*, which sounds like ‘drawn out,’ and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.

- **she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
 - “she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Well of the One who sees me*;”

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text talks about that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - “a young man named *Paul*”¹ The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB)
 - “But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;”

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - “a young man named *Saul*”
- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB) *
 “But __Saul__, who is also called __Paul__, was filled with the Holy Spirit;” * **It came about in Iconium that __Paul__ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue**
 ([[en:bible:notes:act:14:01 | Acts 14:1 ULB)

- "It came about in Iconium that *Paul*¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue"
(Acts 14:1 ULB) The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*

Numbers

This answers the question: How do I translate numbers?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5”. Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. Some are small, such as “five” (5) and “fifteen” (15). Others are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), twenty-two thousand (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was *eighty-six* years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about *three thousand* men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived *162* years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived *962* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of *thousands of ten thousands*. (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- **Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.** (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities."

2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *one million* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. "

3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand (100,000)* talents of gold, *one million (1,000,000)* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

4. Combine words for large numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *a thousand thousand* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents),* and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULB and UDB

The ULB (Unlocked Literal Bible) and the UDB (Unlocked Dynamic Bible) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived *130* years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived *930* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Ordinal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

Ordinal Numbers

This answers the question: What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Numbers*

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

| Numeral | Number | Ordinal Number |
|---------|--------------|----------------|
| 4 | four | fourth |
| 10 | ten | tenth |
| 100 | one hundred | one hundredth |
| 1,000 | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

| Numeral | Number | Ordinal Number |
|---------|--------|----------------|
| 1 | one | first |
| 2 | two | second |
| 3 | three | third |
| 5 | five | fifth |
| 12 | twelve | twelfth |

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the

order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

The *first* lot went to Jehoiarib, the *second* to Jedaiah, the *third* to Harim, the *fourth* to Seorim, ... the *twenty-third* to Delaiah, and the *twenty-fourth* to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

People tossed lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The *first* row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The *second* row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The *third* row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The *fourth* row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULB)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably be the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
 - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *another* to Jedaiah, *another* to Harim,... *another* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
 - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *the next* to Jedaiah, *the next* to Harim,... *the next* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
- **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *the first* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the second* river is Gihon. This one flows**

throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the third* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. *The fourth* river is the Euphrates.(Genesis 2:10-14 ULB)

- "A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *one* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the next* river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the next* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The *last* river is the Euphrates."

2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
 - "They cast *twenty-four* lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim, ... Delaiah, and Maaziah."

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Fractions*

Symbolic Action

This answers the question: What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean “Yes” or turn their head from side to side to mean “No”. Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures.

Translators need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in their own culture, they need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. An action does not have to actually be performed; it may simply be referred to.

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes.”

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and *knock*. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people want someone to welcome them into their home, they stand at the door and knock on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.

- **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB)
 - "Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him."
- **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB)
 - "Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in."

2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

- **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41)
 - "Jairus showed Jesus great respect."
- **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20)
 - "Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in."

3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

- **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB) - Since Jairus actually did this, we would not substitute an action from our own culture.
- **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

- “Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.”

Copy or Borrow Words

This answers the question: What does it mean to borrow words from another language and how can I do it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- [Translate Unknowns](#)

Sometimes the Bible talks about things that your language may not have a word for. It also talks about people and places that you may not have names for. One way you can deal with this problem is “borrow”, or copy, the word from another language into your own language. This page tells how to do that.

Description

Sometimes the Bible talks about things that are not part of your culture and that your language may not have a word for. It also talks about people and places that you may not have a name for.

When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible into your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways of dealing with words for things that are not in your language. See [Translate Unknowns](#)).

Examples from the Bible

He saw a *fig* tree on the roadside (Matthew 21:19 ULB)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, you might not already have a name for this kind of tree.

Above him were the *seraphs* each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULB)

Your language might not already have a name for this kind of creature.

The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of *Malachi*. (Malachi 1:1 ULB)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.

- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

1. If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
2. You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
3. You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
2. You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

- **Zephaniah** - This is a man’s name.

- “Zephaniah”

3. You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

- **Zephaniah** - If your language does not have the “z”, you could use “s”. If your writing system does not use “ph” you could use “f”. Depending on how you pronounce the “i” you could spell it with “i” or “ai” or “ay”.

- “Sefania”
- “Sefanaia”
- “Sefanaya”

Translate Unknowns

This answers the question: How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentences*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals* (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous *wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what *myrrh* is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made *great lights* (Psalm 136:7ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
 - "Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals.*"
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked grain seeds* and two fish"

2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like *snow*** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
 - "your sins ... will be white like *milk*"
 - "your sins ... will be white like *the moon*"

3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
 - "Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *a medicine called myrrh*. But he refused to drink it."
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
 - "We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish"

4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals*** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
 - "I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*"
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish"

5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made *great lights*** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
 - "to him who made *the sun and the moon*"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*
- *How to Translate Names*

Verse Bridges

This answers the question: Why are some verse numbers combined, such as “3-5” or “17-18”?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Structure of the Bible*

Sometimes in the ULB or UDB (an in other versions, too) two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. The numbers are written like this because the information in the verses was rearranged.

Description

In rare cases, you will see in the Unlocked Literal Bible (ULB) or the Unlocked Dynamic Bible (UDB) that two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. It shows where the information in the verses was rearranged so that the story or message could be more easily understood.

²⁹ These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah, ³⁰ Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: these are clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir. (Genesis 26:29-30 ULB)

²⁹⁻³⁰ The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishpan. (Genesis 26:29-30 UDB)

In the ULB text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UDB text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning.

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes the ULB has separate verses while the UDB has a verse bridge.

⁴ However, there should be no poor among you (for Yahweh will surely bless you in the land that he gives you as an inheritance to possess), ⁵ if only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all these commandments that I am commanding you today. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 ULB)

⁴⁻⁵ Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that he is giving to you. If you obey Yahweh our God and obey all the commandments that I am giving to you today, there will not be any poor people among you. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 UDB)

There are also a few verse bridges in the ULB.

¹⁷⁻¹⁸ Ezra's sons were Jether, Mered, Epher, and Jalon. Mered's Egyptian wife bore Miriam, Shammai, and Ishbah, who became the father of Eshtemoa. These were the sons of Bithiah, daughter of Pharaoh, whom Mered married. Mered's Jewish wife bore Jered, who became the father of Gedor; Heber, who became the father of Soco; and Jekuthiel, who became the father of Zanoah. (1 Chronicles 4:17-18 ULB)

Translation Strategies

Order the information in a way that will be clear to your readers.

1. If you put information from one verse before information from an earlier verse, put a hyphen between the two verse numbers.
2. If the ULB has a verse bridge, but another Bible you refer to does not have one, you can choose the order that works best for your language.

See: [Marking Verses in the translationStudio APP](#)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If information from one verse is put before information from an earlier verse, put the verse numbers before the first verse with a hyphen between them.

- ² you must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. ³ You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3)
 - ²⁻³ you must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 UDB)

2. If the ULB has a verse bridge, but another Bible you refer to does not have one, you can choose the order that works best for your language.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Chapter and Verse Numbers](#)

Symbolic Prophecy

This answers the question: What is symbolic prophecy?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Writing Styles*
- *prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess*
- *Symbolic Language*

Description

Symbolic prophecy is a type of message that God gave to a prophet so that the prophet would tell others. These messages use images and symbols to show what God will do in the future.

The main books that have these prophecies are Isaiah, Ezekiel, Daniel, Zechariah, and Revelation. Shorter examples of symbolic prophecy are also found in other books, such as in Matthew 24, Mark 13, and Luke 21.

The Bible tells both how God gave each message and what the message was. When God gave the messages, he often did so in miraculous ways such as in dreams and visions. (See: [dream](#) and [vision](#).) When prophets saw these dreams and visions, they often saw images and symbols about God and heaven. Some of these images are a throne, golden lamp stands, a powerful man with white hair and white clothes, and eyes like fire and legs like bronze. Some of these images were seen by more than one prophet.

The prophecies about the world also contain images and symbols. For example, in some of the prophecies strong animals represent kingdoms, horns represent kings or kingdoms, a dragon or serpent represents the devil, the sea represents the nations, and weeks represent longer periods of time. Some of these images were also seen by more than one prophet.

The prophecies tell about the evil in this world, how God will judge the world and punish sin, and how God will establish his righteous kingdom in the new world he is creating. They also tell about things that will happen concerning heaven and hell.

Some of these writings are presented as poetry and some are presented as narrative. They usually use the past tense because the prophets tell about what they saw in their visions or dreams. But they are about things that would happen in the future. Some of these things happened after the prophets told about them, and some of them will happen at the end of this world.

Reason this is a translation issue: Some of the images are hard to understand because we have never seen things like them before.

Translation Principles

- Translate the images in the text. Do not try to interpret them and translate their meaning.
- When the same image appears in more than one place in the Bible, and it is described in the same way, try to translate it the same way in all those places.

- Sometimes it is difficult to understand what order the events described in the various prophecies happen. Simply write them as they appear in each prophecy.

Examples from the Bible

The following passages describe powerful beings that Ezekiel, Daniel, and John saw. Images that come up in these visions include hair that is white as wool, a voice like many waters, a golden belt, and legs or feet like polished bronze. Though the prophets saw various details, it would be good to translate the details that are the same in the same way.

In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a Son of Man, wearing a long robe that reached down to his feet, and a golden belt around his chest.

His head and hair were as white as wool—as white as snow, and his eyes were like a flame of fire. His feet were like burnished bronze, like bronze that had been refined in a furnace, and his voice was like the sound of many rushing waters. He had in his right hand seven stars, and coming out of his mouth was a sharp two-edged sword. His face was shining like the sun at its strongest shining. (Revelation 1:13-16)

As I looked,
thrones were set in place,
and the Ancient of Days took his seat.
His clothing was as white as snow,
and *the hair of his head was like pure wool.* (Daniel 7:9 ULB)

I looked up and saw a man dressed in linen, with a belt around his waist made of pure gold from Uphaz. His body was like topaz, his face was like lightning, his eyes were like flaming torches, his arms and his feet were like polished bronze, and the sound of his words was like the sound of a great crowd. (Daniel 10:5-6 ULB)

Behold! The glory of the God of Israel came from the east; his voice was like the sound of many waters, and the earth shone with his glory! (Ezekiel 43:2 ULB)

Background Information

This answers the question: What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Order of Events*
- *Writing Styles*

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. Sometimes a writer may give some background information to help his listeners understand the story. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story. The story teller and translator need to tell the story in a way that people will know whether an event is background information and will be able to understand what order the events happened in.

Description

Every story has a storyline. The storyline tells a series of events mostly in the time order that the events happened. It is full of action verbs that moves the reader along the storyline. Occasionally an author may take a break from the storyline to share something of interest. This break is called **background information**. The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because *their village was going to have a a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!* They walked for hours through low bushes until they found a wild pig. They shot the pig and killed it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope *they had brought with them*, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that *it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.*

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter *was* the best hunter in the village" and "*it was* his own pig."

Sometimes a storyteller makes a break in the story to tell about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a a feast the next day" and "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," "that they had brought with them," and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins's pig."

A writer may use background information

- to help their listeners be interested in the story.
- to help their listeners understand something in the story.
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story.

- to tell the setting of a story. Setting includes:
 - where the story takes place.
 - when the story takes place.
 - who is present when the story begins.
 - what is happening when the story begins.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Translators need to know whether or not the events in the Bible happened in the same order that they are told.
- Translators will need to translate the story in a way that their own readers will understand the order of events.

Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram *was* eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, *was* about thirty years of age. He *was* the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULB)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now it happened on a Sabbath that Jesus was going through the grain fields and his disciples were picking the heads of grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULB)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence "But some of the Pharisees said."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study the grammar and punctuation of your language. Observe how your language presents background information in writings. Follow those same grammar rules when you translate.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.

2. Reorder the information so that that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies applied

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULB English translations.

- **Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli.** (Luke 3:23 ULB)- English uses the word “now” to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb “was” shows that it is background information.
- **With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch *for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done.* But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20 ULB) The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb “had” in “had done” shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

2. Reorder the information so that that earlier events are mentioned first.

- **Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.** (Genesis 16:16 ULB)
 - “When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael.”
- **John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch *for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done.* But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20) - The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.
 - “Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Connecting Words*
- *Introduction of a New Event*

Symbolic Language

This answers the question: What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Writing Styles*

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things and events. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things and events. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future.

Eat this scroll, then go speak to the house of Israel.” (Ezekiel 3:1 ULB) This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll.

One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by calling it another. Another purpose of symbolism is to tell people about something that they would be able to understand while hiding the true meaning from others.

Reason this is a translation issue: People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

Translation Principle: When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation. It is also important not to explain it more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

Examples from the Bible

After this I saw in my dream at night *a fourth animal*, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had *large iron teeth*; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had *ten horns*. (Daniel 7:7 ULB)

The meaning of the underlined symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be *a fourth kingdom* on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth,

and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom *ten kings* will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings. (Daniel 7:23-24 ULB)

I turned around to see whose voice was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw *seven golden lampstands*. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a Son of Man, ... He had in his right hand *seven stars*, and coming out of his mouth was *a sharp two-edged sword*.... As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: *the seven stars are the angels of the seven churches*, and *the seven lampstands are the seven churches*. (Revelation 1:12, 16, 20 ULB)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

Translation Strategies

1. Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
2. Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

- **After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns.** (Daniel 7:7 ULB) - People will be able to understand what the symbols mean when they read the explanation in Daniel 7:23-24.

2. Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

- **After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns.** (Daniel 7:7 ULB)

- "After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal,¹ terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth;² it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns."³ The footnotes would look like:

- ◇ ^[1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.
- ◇ ^[2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.
- ◇ ^[3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.